

Publication No. : 177

# A Glossary

of words used in

Durus al-Lughah al-Arabiyyah  
li ghair al-natiqina biha

*Dr. V. Abdur Rahim*

Publishers :



ISLAMIC FOUNDATION TRUST

138, Perambur High Road  
Chennai - 600 012, India

© ISLAMIC FOUNDATION TRUST, CHENNAI.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced or translated or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopy, recording or any information storage or retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher.

## A Glossary of words used in Durus al-Lughah al- Arabiyyah li ghair al-natiqina biha

First Edition : July 2006

ISBN : 81 232 0174 5

Price : Rs. 150.00

Author : Dr. V. Abdur Rahim  
Director, Translation Centre  
King Fahd Quran Printing Complex  
Madinah Munawwarah, K.S.A.

Publishers : ISLAMIC FOUNDATION TRUST  
138, Perambur High Road  
Chennai - 600 012, India  
Ph.: 2662 44 01, Fax: 91-44-2662 0682  
E-mail: iftchennai12@gmail.com  
Website: www.iftchennai.org

---

Printed at Chennai Microprint, Chennai



بِسْمِ اللّٰهِ الرَّحْمٰنِ الرَّحِیْمِ

## PUBLISHER'S NOTE

We have great pleasure in presenting to our readers *A Glossary of Words used in Durus al-Lughah al-Arabiyyah* by Dr V. Abdur Rahim. This is the latest addition to the series of books he has written as supplements to his well-known reader *Durus al-Lughah al-Arabiyyah li-Ghair al-Nâtiqîna bihâ* which is now being used as a textbook all over the world.

The need for an exhaustive glossary of all the words used in all parts of this book has long been felt by the users of this reader everywhere. The credit for the preparation of this useful book must go to Br. Asif Meherali of Toronto, Canada, who not only suggested to the author the desirability of compiling such a glossary, but also constantly reminded him, and once he had commenced the task, kept track of its progress day by day. May Allah *subhânahû wa ta'âlâ* amply reward both the author, and Br. Asif, for without his unfailing interest in the project, and his constant encouragement to the author, the task would not have been completed in time. The Prophet صَلَّى اللهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ has said,

مَنْ دَلَّ عَلَى خَيْرٍ فَلَهُ مِثْلُ أُجْرِ فَاعِلِهِ.

*“He who suggests to someone the doing of a good deed deserves the same reward as that of the one who actually executes it”<sup>(1)</sup>.*

The book is now in your hands, and we are sure that you will find it as useful and helpful as you expected it to be.

May Allah *subhânahû wa ta'âlâ* accept our humble endeavours to serve the language of the Glorious Qur'an, and help us serve better. Amîn.

28.06.2006  
Chennai

H. Abdur Raqeeb  
Chairman  
Islamic Foundation Trust

---

(1) Reported by Muslim: the Book of Imârah, hadîth No 133.

## FOREWORD

الْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ رَبِّ الْعَالَمِينَ، وَالصَّلَاةُ وَالسَّلَامُ عَلَيَّ أَشْرَفِ الْأَنْبِيَاءِ  
وَالْمُرْسَلِينَ، نَبِيِّنَا مُحَمَّدٍ وَعَلَى آلِهِ وَصَحْبِهِ أَجْمَعِينَ.

This is an Arabic-English glossary of words used in my book *Durus al-Lughah al-Arabiyyah*. I have done my best to collect all the words, but it is quite possible that some words might have escaped my notice. Readers are requested to notify me care of the publisher of any omissions so that they may be included in the next edition of the book *in šâ' Allah*.

The need for such a glossary has long been felt as it is wellnigh impossible for students of Arabic in the early stages of their learning to use standard Arabic dictionaries where they are sure to get lost in the maze of innumerable derivatives of each word and their meanings.

Readers must realize that this is a dictionary with limited scope: only those meanings of a word have been listed here which it has in the book.

It is earnestly hoped that readers will be benefited from this humble effort *in šâ' Allah*.

28.06.2006

**Dr. V. Abdur Rahim**  
al-Madinah al-Munawwarah

## Note on the arrangement of entries

Words are arranged according to their roots which are placed in round brackets, and are printed in this font (جلس). Derivatives of each root are mentioned under it without any apparent plan, and printed in this font: جَلَسَ جُلُوساً. Some derivatives which the reader may not easily locate their roots have been alphabetically placed in square brackets, and referred to their roots, e.g., [ثُرَاتٌ] see ورث. Non-Arabic words also been placed alphabetically and in square brackets. In these two categories the vocalic *alif* (â) precedes the *hamzah*, e.g., بَأْسٌ precedes بَاكِسْتَان.

**NOUNS:** Plural of every noun is mentioned preceded by *pl*. Sound masculine plural is indicated by this symbol: ~, and sound feminine plural by this symbol: @, and where the actual plural form is slightly different, both the symbol and the actual plural form are given, e.g., وَفَاةٌ, *pl@* (وَفَايَاتٌ).

If need be, the type of derivative is mentioned, e.g., اسْمُ الْمَكَانِ (smk), i.e., مَعْرَبٌ – اسْمُ الْمَكْنَسَةِ (sl), i.e., اسْمُ الْأَلَّةِ – اسْمُ الْفَاعِلِ (#), مَاشٍ –

This symbol (!) is placed to indicate a مَمْنُوعٌ مِنْ الصَّرْفِ only where the reader is likely to mistake it for a مُنْصَرَفٌ. Conversely, this symbol (!!)

where the reader might mistake a مُنْصَرَفٌ to be a مَمْنُوعٌ مِنَ الصَّرْفِ.

Some proper names used in the Book have been mentioned, but not all.

**VERBS:** Verbs are mentioned in the *mâdi* (with the third person masculine singular ending) and, for convenience, explained with the infinitive, e.g., كَتَبَ, *to write*, though to be accurate, it means *he wrote*. The *abwâb* of the *thulâthi mujarrad* verbs are shown in the following manner:

سَجَدَ يَسْجُدُ	a-u	فَتَحَ يَفْتَحُ	a-a
جَلَسَ يَجْلِسُ	a-i	وَرِثَ يَرِثُ	i-i
شَرِبَ يَشْرَبُ	i-a	كَثُرَ يَكْثُرُ	u-u

The *abwâb* of the *thulâthi mazîd* verbs are shown in the following manner:

فَعَلَ	i	اَفْعَلَّ اَفْتَعَلًا	viii
فَعَّلَ تَفْعِيلًا	ii	اَفْعَلُّ اَفْعِلًا	ix
فَاعَلَ مُفَاعَلَةً، وَفِعَالًا	iii	اَفْعَالٌ اَفْعِيَالًا	ixa
اَفْعَلَّ اِفْعَالًا	iv	اَسْتَفْعَلَّ اِسْتَفْعَالًا	x
تَفَعَّلَ تَفْعُّلًا	v	اَفْعَوَعَلَ	xi
تَفَاعَلَ تَفَاعُلًا	vi	اَفْعَوَّلَ	xii
اِنْفَعَلَ اِنْفِعَالًا	vii		

The *abwâb* of the *rubâ'î* verbs are shown in the following manner:

فَعَّلَلَّ	<i>rb</i>	اَفْعَلَّلَّ	<i>rbiii</i>
تَفَعَّلَّلَّ	<i>rbii</i>	اَفْعَنْلَّلَّ	<i>rbiv</i>

The *maçdar* of each verb is mentioned immediately after the verb, and is given in the *mançûb* case thus making it the *maf'ûl mutlaq* as it is done in Arabic dictionaries.

### Note on transliteration

In transliteration ç is used for ص, ş for ش, t for ط, z for ظ, and h for ه (tâ marbûtah).

## Symbols and abbreviations

#	اسْمُ الْفَاعِلِ	<i>md</i>	الْمَاضِي
&	اسْمُ الْمَفْعُولِ	<i>mr</i>	الْمُضَارِعُ
\$	اسْمُ التَّفْضِيلِ	<i>mt</i>	الْمُطَاوِعُ
~	جَمْعُ الْمَذْكَرِ السَّالِمِ	<i>nnkt</i>	تُونُ التَّوَكِيدِ
@	جَمْعُ الْمُؤَنَّثِ السَّالِمِ	<i>nq</i>	الْفِعْلُ النَّاقِصُ
!	الْمَمْنُوعُ مِنَ الصَّرْفِ	<i>pl</i>	الْجَمْعُ
!!	الْمُنْصَرَفُ	<i>pl*</i>	Plural of all the preceding words/the preceding word in all senses.
⊗	مُبَالَغَةُ اسْمِ الْفَاعِلِ	<i>pl+</i>	جَمْعُ الْجَمْعِ
x			
<i>ai</i>	أَدَاةُ الْاسْتِثْنَاءِ	<i>pl~</i>	جَمْعُ الْمَذْكَرِ السَّالِمِ
<i>aš</i>	أَدَاةُ الشَّرْطِ	<i>pl@</i>	جَمْعُ الْمُؤَنَّثِ السَّالِمِ
ç	الْمَصْدَرُ	Q	الْقُرْآنُ الْكَرِيمُ
<i>çh</i>	مَصْدَرُ الْهَيْئَةِ	<i>rb</i>	الْفِعْلُ الرَّبَاعِيُّ بَابُ فَعَّلَ
<i>çm</i>	الْمَصْدَرُ الْمِيمِيُّ	<i>sç</i>	اسْمُ الْمَصْدَرِ
<i>çmr</i>	مَصْدَرُ الْمَرَّةِ	<i>sf</i>	اسْمُ الْفِعْلِ
<i>çmw</i>	الْمَصْدَرُ الْمُؤَوَّلُ	<i>sis/</i>	أَخْتُ إِنْ
		<i>inna</i>	

<i>fem</i>	المُؤنَّثُ	<i>sis/k</i>	أُخْتُ كَانَ
<i>fq</i>	الفِقهُ	<i>sjj</i>	اسْمُ الْجِنْسِ الْجَمْعِيِّ
<i>ft</i>	الفِعْلُ التَّامُ	<i>sl</i>	اسْمُ الآلَةِ
<i>gr</i>	grammar	<i>smk</i>	اسْمُ الْمَكَانِ
<i>hf</i>	حَرْفُ العَطْفِ	<i>šr</i>	الشَّرِيعَةُ
<i>hj</i>	حَرْفُ الجَرِّ	<i>sz</i>	اسْمُ الزَّمَانِ
<i>hn</i>	حَرْفُ النَّصْبِ	<i>tk</i>	التَّوَكِيدُ
<i>jmd</i>	الفِعْلُ الْجَامِدُ	<i>tm</i>	الفِعْلُ التَّامُ
<i>masc</i>	المُذَكَّرُ	<i>z</i>	الظَّرْفُ
<i>mb</i>	المَبْنِيُّ	<i>zm</i>	ظَرْفُ الْمَكَانِ
-	-	<i>zz</i>	ظَرْفُ الزَّمَانِ



[أَبْتِدَائِيَّةٌ], 'primary' as in الْمَدْرَسَةُ  
 بِدَأً. See أَبْتِدَائِيَّةٌ.

أَبَدًا (following a negative verb in the future  
 tense), never, e.g., لَنْ أَكْذِبَ أَبَدًا, I will never tell a  
 lie.

نَاقَةٌ, he-camel, جَمَلٌ, (fem) إِبِلٌ (أبِلٌ),  
 she-camel).

إِبْلِيسُ (!), Satan. (أبْلِيسُ)

آبَاءٌ, father, pl أَبٌ (أَبُو)

الْأَبَوَانِ (dual) parents.

أَبَى يَا بِي إِبَاءً (أَبِي) (a-a), to refuse, reject. ???

أَبْيَضٌ, white. See بَيْضٌ.

أَتَى فَلَانًا يَأْتِي إِثِينَانًا (أَتِي) (a-i), to come, e.g.,  
 أَتَى الْإِمَامَ رَجُلٌ وَسَأَلَ سُؤَالَ عَنِ الْحَجِّ  
 a man came to the  
 imam and asked him a question about hajj.

آثَارٌ, effect, pl أَثَرٌ (أَثَرٌ)

آثَامٌ *sin, pl* وَاِثْمٌ (إِثْمٌ).

أَثَامٌ, penalty for sin.

أَجْرَاءُ *pl*, أَجِيرٌ, workman, hireling, (أَجْرٌ).

أَجُورٌ *pl*, أَجْرٌ, recompense, reward, أَجْرٌ.

أَجْرَةٌ, wages, hire. سَيَّارَةُ الْأَجْرَةِ, taxi.

اسْتَأْجَرَ اسْتِئْجَارًا x, to rent.

أَجَلٌ (أَجَلٌ), appointed time, deadline, time of death,

*pl* آجَالٌ.

أَجَّلَ تَأْجِيلًا ii, to postpone.

مِنْ أَجْلِ / لِأَجْلِ (followed by *mudâf ilaihi*), for the sake of, because of.

أَحَدٌ الطُّلَّابِ, one of the students. إِحْدَى, e.g., إِحْدَى

إِحْدَى الطَّبِيبَاتِ, one of the lady doctors. أَحَدُنَا, one of us.

إِحْدَاهُنَّ, one of them.

حُمْرٌ\* *pl*, حَمْرَاءُ *fem*, red, [أَحْمَرٌ]. See حمرة.

[اخْتِبَارٌ], examination. See خبير.

أَخَذَ أَخْذًا (أَخَذَ), (a-u), to take (*amr* خُذْ).

أَخَذَ الْمُدْرَسُ (sis/k), to begin doing, e.g., أَخَذَ يَفْعَلُ

وَيَشْرَحُ الدَّرْسَ, the teacher began to explain the lesson.

أَخَذَ يُؤَاخِذُ مُؤَاخِذَةً iii, to censure, punish.

أَتَّخَذَ اتَّخَذَ viii (for اِتَّخَذَ), to adopt.

أَخَّرَ تَأَخَّرَ (أَخْرَ) ii, to delay.

تَأَخَّرَ تَأَخَّرَ v, to be late.

اسْتَأَخَّرَ اسْتَأَخَّرَ x, to be late, be delayed.

الْآخِرَةُ, the hereafter.

وَلِي ثَلَاثُ أَخَوَاتٍ أُخْرُ, e.g., أُخْرَى (!), plural of أُخْرُ I  
have three other sisters.

خَضْرُ, green, fem خَضْرَاءُ, pl\* خَضْرٌ. See خَضْرُ.

إِخْوَةٌ، إِخْوَانٌ pl, أَخَوَانٍ dual, أَخٌ (أَخُو).

أُخْتٌ, sister, pl@ (أَخَوَاتٌ).

مَادِبٌ pl, مَادِبَةٌ, feast, banquet, (أَدْب).

أَدَّبَ فُلَانًا تَأْدِيبًا ii, to punish, discipline.

أَدَاةٌ (أَدُو), tool, instrument. (gr), word denoting a  
grammatical function such as أَدَاةُ الشَّرْطِ, word

denoting condition, *أَدَاةُ الاسْتِثْنَاءِ*, word denoting exception etc., *أَدَوَاتٌ* pl.

[إِدْوَرْدُ], Edward.

إِذْنٌ see إِذَا.

إِذَا جَاءَكَ بِلَالٌ فَخُذْ مِنْهُ عُنْوَانَ إِذَا (as) ① when, if, e.g., إِذَا جَاءَكَ بِلَالٌ فَخُذْ مِنْهُ عُنْوَانَ إِذَا, if Bilal come to you, take from him his brother's address.

② particle denoting surprise (mostly with a prefixed فَ), e.g., ظَنَنْتُهُ طَالِبًا فَإِذَا هُوَ مُدَرِّسٌ, I thought he was a student, and – to my surprise – he turned out to be a teacher.

آذَانٌ (fem), ear, pl أُذُنٌ (أذن).

أَذِنَ لِفُلَانٍ فِي الْأَمْرِ إِذْنًا (i-a), to permit, allow.

إِذْنٌ, permission.

أَذَنَ يُؤَذِّنُ تَأْذِينًا وَأَذَانًا (مؤذِّنٌ #), to call to prayer.

أَذَانٌ, the call to prayer.

اسْتَأْذَنَ اسْتِئْذَانًا x, to ask permission.

وَإِذْنٍ نَنْتَظِرُهُ (hn), in that case, e.g.,

in that case, we wait for him (said in reply to, يَأْتِي بِلَالٌ

بَعْدَ خَمْسِ دَقَائِقَ, Bilal is coming in five minutes). If it is followed by a noun, it is written with *alif* (إِذَا), e.g., إِذَا أَنْتَ مُتَزَوِّجٌ, that means you are married.

(أَذَى) أذى, harm, injury, offence.

[أَرَادَ], to want. *see* رُود.

الأُرْدِيَّةُ, Urdu (language).

أَرَاضٍ (الأَرَاضِي) (أَرْضٌ) (fem), earth, floor, *pl* أَرَاضٍ.

أَرَائِكُ<sup>1</sup>, couch, sofa, *pl* أَرَائِكُ.

أَرَانِبُ<sup>1</sup> (!!), rabbit, *pl* أَرَانِبُ.

إِزَارٌ (أَزْرٌ), sheet covering the lower part of the body, *pl* أَزْرٌ.

[أَزْرَقُ], blue. *See* زَرْق.

[الأَزْهَرُ], al-Azhar University in Cairo.

أُسْتَاذٌ (أُسْتَاذٌ), teacher, professor (academic title), a term of address to educated people (but usually not to religious scholars), *pl* أَسَاتِذَةٌ.

---

<sup>1</sup> - See the Qur'an, 18:31/26:56/76:13/83:23, 35.

أُسْتُرَالِيَا (أُسْتُر) Astralia.

أُسْرٌ (أُسْرَة) family, *pl* أُسْرٌ.

أُسْرَى (أُسَيْرٌ) captive, prisoner, *pl* أُسْرَى.

أَسِيفٌ (أَسِيفٌ) and أُسِيفٌ (#) (i-a), to feel sorry. (أَسِفٌ).

أَسْمَاءٌ (أَسْمٌ) name, *pl* أَسْمَاءٌ. See سَمُو.

أَسْوَدٌ (أَسْوَدٌ) black. See سَوَد.

أَسِيَا (أَسِيَا), Asia.

إِسْطَنْبُولٌ (إِسْطَنْبُولٌ), Istanbul.

أَصْلٌ (أَصْلٌ) origin, original form, *pl* أَصُولٌ.

أَصْلًا (أَصْلًا), originally.

حَرْفٌ أَصْلِيٌّ (gr), one of the three or four original letters (or radicals) of the verb like each of the three letters in سَلِمَ, and each of the four letters in طَمَّأَنَ.

The first radical is called ف, the second ع, and the third ل which are the three radicals of the verb فَعَلَ, to do.

إِفْرِيْقِيَا (إِفْرِيْقِيَا), Africa.

أَفْرِيْقِيَةٌ (إِفْرِيْقِيَةٌ) African, *pl* أَفْرِيْقِيَةٌ.

[أَفْغَانِسْتَانُ], Afghanistan.

(أَف) أَفٌ (sf), a word signifying anger and annoyance, fie.

(أَكَّدَ تَأْكِيدًا) ii. (same as تَوَكَّدَ تَوَكُّيدًا.)

(أَكَّدَ الْفِعْلَ تَأْكِيدًا) (gr), to emphasize the verb with the تَوَكُّيدُ.

تَأَكَّدَ تَأَكُّدًا v, to make sure.

(أَكَلَ أَكْلًا) (a-u), to eat. (أَمْرٌ كُلُّ).

أَكَّالٌ (⊗), one who eats excessively, a glutton, pl~.

(إِلَّا) (ai), except.

إِن لَّا = إِلَّا.

أَلَا, a particle of 'commencement and cautioning'

(حَرْفُ الْإِسْتِفْتَاكِحِ وَالتَّنْبِيهِ) which is placed at the beginning of a sentence to draw the attention of the reader/listener to the important statement following it, e.g., Q13:28, أَلَا بِذِكْرِ اللَّهِ تَطْمَئِنُّ الْقُلُوبُ, 'Verily,

in the remembrance Allah do hearts find rest.'

ثَلَاثَةٌ Note: آلفٌ، أُلُوفٌ pl thousand، أَلْفٌ (ألف)  
ثَلَاثَةٌ، three thousand، خَمْسَةٌ آلافٍ، five thousand.  
أَلْفٌ يَبْنِي الْقُلُوبَ تَأْلِيفًا ii, to join the hearts in love, to  
unite.

أَلْفٌ كِتَابًا ii, to write a book.

مُؤَلِّفٌ (#ii), author, pl~.

هَذِهِ مُؤَلَّفٌ (&ii), book (by an author), pl@, e.g.,  
مُؤَلَّفَاتِي، these are my books, i.e., books authored by  
me.

أَلِفٌ (fem), the letter *alif*, pl أَلِفَاتٌ.

أَلِفٌ التَّائِيثِ (gr), an *alif* at the end of a noun coming  
after the radicals as in مَرَضِي (the sick). Note that the  
*alif* in مُسْتَشْفَى is not أَلِفٌ التَّائِيثِ as it is the  
third radical.

If this *alif* is not followed by a *hamzah*, it is called  
أَلِفٌ الْمَقْصُورَةُ (the shortened *alif*), e.g., قَتَلِي، دُنْيَا.

And if it is followed by a *hamzah*, it is called  
أَلِفٌ الْمَمْدُودَةُ (the elongated *alif*), e.g., حَمْرَاءُ، فُقَرَاءُ.

أَلَمٌ (الم)، pain, pl آَلَمٌ.



أَلِيمٌ, painful.

أَلْمَانِيٌّ, Germany. أَلْمَانٌ (sjj), Germans *sing* أَلْمَانِيٌّ.

أَلِهَةٌ (pronounced إِلهَةٌ), god, deity, *pl* أَلِهَةٌ (أله).

إِلَى (with pronouns — إِلَيْهِ) (hj) to, towards.

إِلَيْكَ / إِلَيْكُمْ / إِلَيْكِ / إِلَيْكُمْ (sf), here is for you, take.

إِلَيْكُمْ نَشْرَةَ الْإِخْبَارِ, here is the news bulletin for you.

(Note that the noun following إِلَيْكُمْ is *mançûb*. In

this sense the word إِلَى is followed only by the pronoun of the second person. Neither a noun nor a pronoun of the first or third persons can follow it).

وَمَا إِلَى ذَلِكَ, et cetera.

أَبْرِيْطَانِيٌّ أَنْتَ أَمْ أَمْرِيْكَ؟, or (in a question), e.g., أَمْ (أَمْ) Are you British or American? (one of two alternatives precedes أَمْ while the other follows it).

أَيْنَ, as for (فَ is prefixed to its *khobar*), e.g.,

وَبِلَالٌ وَأَخُوهُ؟ -- أَمَّا بِلَالٌ فَفِي الْفَصْلِ، وَأَمَّا أَخُوهُ فَعِنْدَ الْمُدِيرِ

Where are B and his brother? -- As for B, he is in the class, and as for his brother, he is at the headmaster's.

إِمَّا, either...or, e.g., وَإِمَّا مُؤْتَتٌ, A noun is either masculine or feminine.

إِمَّا for إِنْ مَّا. It is the *as* إِنْ to which مَّا has been added for emphasis. The *mr* verb following it is mostly emphasized with *nntk*, e.g., وَإِنْ تَخْرُجْ أَخْرُجْ, if you go out, I will also do so. → إِمَّا تَخْرُجَنَّ أَخْرُجْ.

[إِمْتِحَانٌ], examination. See مَحَنٌ.

(أَمْرًا) (a-u), to command, order. (The *amr* is مُرٌ without the *hamzaḥ*, but after و and فَ the *hamzaḥ* is restored: وَأَمْرٌ and فَأَمْرٌ).

أَمْرَاءٌ, commander, *pl* أميرٌ.

مُؤْتَمَرٌ (*smkviii*), conference, *pl*@.

[أَمْرِيكَا], America.

أَمْرِيكِيٌّ, American, *pl*~.

أَمْسٌ, yesterday. دَرَسُ الْأَمْسِ, yesterday's lesson.

تَأَمَّلْ تَأْمُلًا (أَمَلٌ) *v*, to think over, ponder.

أُمَّهَاتٌ, mother, *pl* أُمَّةٌ (أَمٌّ).

أُمَّةٌ, nation, community, *pl* أُمَّمٌ.

أَمَامَ (*zm*), in front of, e.g., أَمَامَ الْبَيْتِ, in front of the house, أَمَامَكَ, in front of you.

أَئِمَّةٌ, imam, *pl* إِمَامٌ.

أَمِنَ iv, to believe. بَكَدَا يُؤْمِنُ إِيْمَانًا (أَمِنَ)

مُؤْمِنٌ, believer, *pl*~.

أَمْنَاءُ, treasurer, *pl* أَمِينُ الصُّنْدُوقِ, secretary. أَمِينٌ

أَمِينٌ, amen, O Allah, answer our prayer.

إِمَاءٌ, slave girl, *pl* أُمَّةٌ (أَمُو)

وَإِنْ if (*aš*, renders both the verbs *majzûm*),

e.g., وَإِنْ تَذَهَبُ إِلَى السُّوقِ أَذْهَبُ مَعَكَ, if you go to market, I will also go with you.

وَإِنْ not, e.g., Q74:25, وَإِنْ هَذَا إِلَّا قَوْلُ الْبَشَرِ, 'This is nothing but the sayings of a human being.'

وَإِنَّ the 'lightened' form of وَإِنْ e.g., Q12:3, وَإِنَّ

كُنْتُمْ مِنْ قَبْلِهِ لَمَنِ الْغَافِلِينَ, 'And before this, you were indeed among those who were unaware (of this story).'

وَأَيْمًا بِالْأَعْمَالِ بِالنِّيَّاتِ, only, e.g., actions are to be judged only on the basis of (the doer's) intentions.

أَنْتَ (أنت) you (*masc/sing*), *pl* أَنْتُمْ.

أَنْتِ (أنتِ) you (*fem/sing.*), *pl* أَنْتُنَّ.

أَنْتُمَا you (*masc-fem/dual*).

إِنَاثٌ (أناث) female, feminine, *pl* إناثٌ.

أَنْثَتُ تَأْنِيثًا ii (*gr*), to feminize, give the feminine ending/form.

مُؤَنَّثٌ (*gr*), feminine.

[الْأَنْدَلُسُ], Spain (during the Muslim rule).

[إِنْدُونِيسِيَا], Indonesia.

إِنْدُونِيسِيَا Indonesian.

إِنْسِيٌّ (أنس) man, mankind, *sing* إِنْسِيٌّ.

[إِنْكَلْتْرَا], England.

أَنْفٌ (أنف) nose, *pl* أَنْفٌ.

الْإِنْكَلِيزِيَّةُ English (language).

أَوَانٍ *pl+*, آنيَّة *pl*, vessel, container, إِنَاءٌ (أني) (الأواني).

تَأَنَّى *v*, to act unhurriedly.

أَهْلُ هَذِهِ, relatives, kinsfolk, people as in أَهْلُ الْقَرْيَةِ, people of this village, *pl* (الأهالي).

كُلُّ هَذَا أَوْ ذَاكَ, or (in a non-question), e.g., أَوْ (أو) eat this or that, يَنْبَغِي أَنْ يُكْتَبَ الْعُنْوَانُ بِالْإِنْكِلِيزِيَّةِ أَوْ بِالْفَرَنْسِيَّةِ, the address should be written either in English or French.

آبَ يَأُوبُ إِيَابًا (أوب) (a-u), to return.

[أوربًا], Europe.

(مُؤَوَّلٌ &). ii, أَوَّلَ تَأْوِيلًا (أول).

مَصْدَرٌ مُؤَوَّلٌ (*gr*), phrase functioning as مَصْدَرٌ, e.g.,

أُرِيدُ الْخُرُوجَ which can be construed as أُرِيدُ أَنْ أَخْرُجَ.

هَذَا أَوَّلُ كِتَابٍ عَرَبِيٍّ, first day. أَوَّلُ, first, e.g.,

أَوَّلِي *fem*, this is the first Arabic I have read. قَرَأْتُهُ

آل, kinsfolk, followers, supporters.

[أُولَئِكَ] (*mb*), those (*mscl/fem*). See ذَا.

(أُولُو) (pronounced أُو without the first و), possessors, e.g., أُولُو قُوَّةٍ, possessors of strength and power, i.e., strong and powerful.

(أَوْه) (*sf*), word signifying pain.

آيٍ، sign, *âyah*, *pl@*، آيَةٌ (أوي).

الْحُرْمُ أَيُّ الْمُحْرَمُونَ, that is,<sup>1</sup> e.g., أَيُّ (أي).

أوب [إِيَابٌ] see

[إِيرَانُ], Iran.

أَيْضًا (أَيْضُ), also.

أَيْنَ (أَيْنُ), where. مِنْ أَيْنَ, where from.

أَيْنَمَا (أَيْنَمَا), wherever. In Q4:78, أَيْنَمَا تَكُونُوا يُدْرِكَكُمُ الْمَوْتُ

'Wherever you may be, death will overtake you...'

الآن (أَيْنُ), now.

أَيُّ طَالِبٍ (أَيْيُ), which, e.g., أَيُّ طَالِبٍ

أَيُّهُمَا, which student is sick? أَيُّهُمَا, which of

---

<sup>1</sup> - The Latin abbreviation, i.e. meaning 'that is' is very close to the Arabic word.

the two? أَيُّهُمَّ, which of them? أَيُّنَا, which of us?

وَأَيُّ صَحِيفَةٍ نَجِدُ نَشْتَرُهَا, whichever, e.g., أَيُّ (aš), whichever newspaper we find, we will buy it.

أَيَّانَ (mb), when.

## ب

(ب) — (bj), in, at, with, e.g., أَدْرُسُ بِالْجَامِعَةِ, I study at the university. ذَهَبْنَا بِالسَّيَّارَةِ, we went by car. لَا تَكْتُبْ بِهَذَا الْقَلَمِ, don't write with this pen. بِمَ with what?

[بَابٌ], door. See بوب.

[بَارِيسٌ], Paris.

[بَاكِسْتَانٌ], Pakistan.

(بَأْسٌ) ① harm, hurt. ② strength, might. ③ war.

لَا بَأْسَ, never mind, it doesn't matter, it is all right,

May no harm come to you!

(بَتْرٌ), without offspring.

تَبَتَّلَ إِلَى اللَّهِ تَبَتُّلاً (بتل) v, to be cut off the word and devote oneself to Allah.

بَتَّلَ إِلَى اللَّهِ تَبْتِيلاً ii, same as v.

(بَحَثٌ) (a-a), to look for.

(بَحْرٌ), sea, ocean, pl بَحَارٌ.



(بخر) بُخَارٌ, steam.

(بدأ) بَدَأَ (a-a), to start, begin, commence.

أَبْتَدَأَ ابْتِدَاءً viii, to commence, start.

الْجُمْلَةُ ( gr), subject of a nominal sentence (مُبْتَدَأٌ)

الْقَمَرُ جَمِيلٌ، الْوَلَدُ يَقْرَأُ، الْقَلَمُ عَلَى الْمَكْتَبِ, e.g., (الاسْمِيَّةُ)

الْمَدْرَسَةُ الْإِبْتِدَائِيَّةُ, primary school.

(بدد) لَا بُدَّ مِنْ كَذَا, escape. it is absolutely

imperative, e.g., لَا بُدَّ لَكَ مِنْ سَيَّارَةٍ, it is absolutely

imperative that you have a car (you must have a car).

لَا بُدَّ أَنْ أَكَلِّمَ طَبِيبِي الْيَوْمَ, I must talk to my doctor today.

(بدر) بَدْرٌ, a place between Makkah and Madinah.

بِدْعَةٌ, innovation in religious matters, pl بدع.

(بدل) بَدَّلَ (gr), apposition, i.e., a word following another and referring to the same person or thing,

e.g., نَجَحَ أَخِي بِلَالٌ, my brother B has passed. Here

بِلَالٌ is the same as أَخِي. The word بِلَالٌ is بَدَّلَ and

مُبَدَّلٌ مِنْهُ is أَخِي.

يَبْدُو أَنَّهُ (a-u), to appear, seem, e.g.,

بَدَا يَبْدُو (بدو) مَرِيضٌ, he seems to be sick. ??? 1 and 2

(بَرَأَ) (a-a), to create. (# بَارِئٌ).

بَرِيَّةٌ, creature, all that has been created, pl بَرَائِيَا.

بَرْتَقَالَةٌ (sjj), oranges, sing [بُرْتُقَالٌ]

تَبَرَّجَتِ الْمَرْأَةُ تَبَرُّجًا (برج) v, to display her charms (woman).

تَبَرَّجٌ (v), display by a woman of her charms.

رَأَيْتُهُ الْبَارِحَةَ (zz), last night, e.g., رأيتُهُ الْبَارِحَةَ (برح) I saw him last night.

بَارِدٌ (برد) cold.

بَرْدٌ, coldness, coolness, cold (ailment).

بَرْدٌ, hailstone.

بَرِيدٌ, post. مَكْتَبُ الْبَرِيدِ, post office.

مَبَارِدٌ (a-u), to file. مِبْرَدٌ, file, pl مَبَارِدٌ.

تَبَرَّدَ تَبَرُّدًا v, to get into water to refresh oneself.

بُرٌّ (sjj), wheat. (برر)

بِرٌّ, piety, righteousness.

بُرُوزاً (a-u), to to come into view, stand out, protrude. (# بَارِزٌ).

بُرُوقٌ, lightening, pl (برق).

بَرْقِيَّةٌ, telegram, pl@.

بَرَكَاتٌ, blessing, pl (بركة).

بَارَكٌ iii, to bless. (& مُبَارَكٌ).

اللَّهُ تَبَارَكَ وَتَعَالَى vi, to be blessed, be praised as in

بَرَامِجٌ, programme, pl (برمج).

بِرَاهِينٌ, proof, pl (برهان).

بَرَى الْقَلَمَ بَرِيًّا (a-i), to sharpen (the pencil).

مِبْرَاةٌ, pencil-sharpener.

بَارَى يُبَارِي مُبَارَاةً iii, to compete, contest.

مُبَارَاةٌ (çiii), match, game.

بَرِيْطَانِيَّةٌ, Britain. بَرِيْطَانِيٌّ, British, pl~.

بَزَغَ الْقَمَرَ بَزُوغًا (a-u), to rise.

بَسَطَ بَسْطًا (a-u), to spread out.

بُسُطٌ, carpet, *pl* بُسُطٌ.

(بسم) (a-i), to smile. بَسَمَ بَسْمًا (بسم)

تَبَسَّمَ تَبَسُّمًا v, to smile.

أَبْتَسَّمَ أَبْتِسَامًا viii, to smile.

بِسْمِ اللَّهِ (rb), to pronounce بِسْمِ اللَّهِ (بسمل)

الرَّحْمَنِ الرَّحِيمِ, in the name of Allah, the  
Compassionate, the Merciful.

اسْتَبَشَّرَ اسْتِبْشَارًا (بشر) x, to rejoice.

بَصَرَ بَصَارَةً (بصر) (u-u), to see, comprehend.

بَصِيرٌ ❶ endowed with insight. ❷ opposite of  
بُصْرَاءُ (blind), *pl*\* كَفِيفٌ.

(بضع) any number from three to nine. It is used  
exactly like the number, e.g.,

بِضْعَةُ طُلَّابٍ، وَبِضْعُ طَالِبَاتٍ.

بِضْعَةَ عَشَرَ طَالِبًا، وَبِضْعَ عَشْرَةَ طَالِبَةً.

بِضْعَةَ وَعِشْرُونَ طَالِبًا، وَبِضْعُ وَعِشْرُونَ طَالِبَةً.

(بطس) (!) (sjj), potato. بَطَاطِسُ (بطس)

بَطَّةٌ (both masc/fem). بَطَّ (sjj), ducks, *sing* (بطط)

بَطَائِقُ، بَطَاقَاتُ *pl*، بطاقةٌ (بطق).

بَطَلَ بَطْلَانًا (a-u), to become void, invalid, untrue. (# بَاطِلٌ).

أَبْطَلَ الأَمْرَ إِبْطَالًا iv, to invalidate.

بُطُونٌ *pl*، بَطْنٌ (بطن).

إِظْهَارُ مَا لَيْسَ فِي البَاطِنِ (literally, to show what is not in the inside) (*gr*), to feign as in تَمَارَضَ, to feign sickness, تَعَامَى, to feign blindness.

بَعَثَرَ بَعْثَرَةً (rb), to scatter.

بَعُدَ بَعْدًا (u-u), to be far. (# بَعِيدٌ, far).

لَمْ يَأْتِ بَعْدُ (*mb*) (with a negative verb), not yet, e.g., بَعْدُ, he has not yet come.

مِنْ بَعْدُ (*mb*) (without the *mudâf ilaihi*), later, e.g.,

قَابَلْتُهُ مِنْ بَعْدُ فِي اليَابَانِ, I later met him in Japan.

بَاعَدَ بَيْنَ شَيْئَيْنِ مُبَاعَدَةً iii, separate, remove.

أَبَاعِرُ *pl+*، أَبْعِرَةٌ *pl*، بَعِيرٌ (بعر).

بَعْضٌ (بعض).

مِنُ التَّبَعِيَّةِ، the partitive *min*, i.e., مِنْ meaning *some*, e.g., مِنَ الطُّلَّابِ مَنْ لَا يَعْرِفُ الْفِرَنْسِيَّةَ، among the students are some who do not know French.

[بَغْدَادُ], Baghdad.

بَغَى الشَّيْءَ بُغْيَةً (بَغِي) (a-i), to seek, to desire.

بَغَى عَلَى فُلَانٍ بُغْيًا، to wrong, commit aggression.

لَا يَنْبَغِي لَكَ أَنْ أَنْبَغِيَ vii, to be proper, becoming. أَنْبَغِيَ، it is not proper that you do such a thing.

بَعْلٌ، mule, *pl* بَعَالٌ (بَعْل).

بَعْلَةٌ، female mule, *pl*\* (بَعْلَاتٌ).

بَقَرَةٌ، cow, *pl* بَقَرَاتٌ (بَقْر).

بَقَّالٌ، grocer, greengrocer, *pl*~ (بَقْل).

بَقِيَ (الْبَاقِي) (#) (i-a), to remain. (بَقِيَ) بَقَاءً (بَقِي).

اسْتَبَقَى اسْتِبْقَاءً x, to retain, preserve.

بَكَرَ تَبَكُّرًا (بَكَر) ii, to be early. (#) (مُبَكَّرٌ).

مُبَكَّرًا، early, e.g., خَرَجْتُ مُبَكَّرًا، I set out early.

بَكَّةٌ، another name of Makkaḥ (Mecca) (بَك).

بُكْمٌ\* *pl*, بَكْمَاءُ *fem*, أُنْكَمُ (بكم).

بَاكٍ (البَاكِي) (#) بَكَى يَبْكِي بُكَاءً (بكي).

أُنْكِي إِنْكَاءً iv, to make someone cry.

تَبَاكِي تَبَاكِيًا vi, to feign crying, make a show of crying.

بَلٌ (بل) on the contrary, rather, nay. See إِضْرَابٌ.

[بَلْجِيكًا], Belgium.

بَلَدٌ (بلد) town, country, *pl* بِلَادٌ.

بَلَدِيَّةٌ municipality, *pl@*.

بَلَعٌ بَلَعًا (a-a), بَلَعٌ بَلَعًا (i-a), to swallow.

بَوَالِيعٌ sewer opening, *pl*.

بَلَغَ بُلُوغًا (a-u), reach, amount to.

بَلَّغَنِي أَنَّهُ مَرِيضٌ, it has come to knowledge that he is sick.

مَبَالِغٌ amount, *pl*.

بَلِيغٌ eloquent, conforming to the rules of rhetoric. (§

أَبْلَغُ).

بَالَغٌ مُبَالَغَةً iii, to exaggerate.

مُبَالَغَةٌ (gr) action denoting intensity, e.g., كَسَرَ, to smash (as compared to كَسَرَ, to break), and قَطَعَ, to cut into pieces (as compared to قَطَعَ, to cut).

مُبَالَغَةُ اسْمِ الْفَاعِلِ (gr), forms of اسْمِ الْفَاعِلِ denoting exaggerated action, e.g., أَكَّالٌ, glutton (compared to أَكِلٌ, eater), غَفُورٌ, one whose nature it is to forgive (as compared to غَافِرٌ, one who forgives).

بَلَى (بلى) (in answer to a negative question), yes, e.g., if a teacher is asked, أَلَسْتَ مُدَرِّسًا؟, 'Are you not a teacher?' he replies, بَلَى, 'yes, I am.'

بِنَاتٌ (بنات) daughter; girl, pl@ (بنت).

بِنَصْرٍ (بنصر) (fem), ring finger.

بَانٍ (#) ① to build. (a-i) بَنَى يَبْنِي بِنَاءً (بني) (مَبْنِيٌّ & (الباني) ② (gr), to make a noun/verb indeclinable (i.e., with fixed endings).

مَبْنِيٌّ (gr), noun or verb with fixed endings like هَوْلَاءُ (noun), يَكْتُبْنَ (verb).



مَبْنِيٌّ لِلْمَعْلُومِ (gr), verb in the active voice.

مَبْنِيٌّ لِلْمَجْهُولِ (gr), verb in the passive voice.

مَبَانٍ (المَبَانِي) building, edifice, pl مَبْنِيٌّ.

بَهْجَةٌ (بهج) joy, delight.

بَاهِرٌ (بهر) brilliant, dazzling.

أَبَّهَمَ إِبْهَامًا (بهم) iv, to make something obscure and undetermined.

مُبْهَمٌ (&iv), vague, ambiguous, unspecified.

أَبَاهِيمُ (mostly fem), thumb, pl إِبْهَامٌ.

أَبْوَابٌ pl\* (gr) verb group. ① بَابٌ (بواب) door. ②

بَوَّابٌ, gatekeeper, pl~.

يَبُولُ بَوْلًا (بول) to urinate.

أَبْوَالٌ pl urine, بَوْلٌ.

بَالٌ, state, condition.

بَيْتٌ ① house, pl بُيُوتٌ ② couplet, verse,

pl أَبْيَاتٌ.

بَيْضٌ (for بُيُضٌ) pl\* بَيْضَاءُ, white, fem أَبْيَضٌ (بيض).

أَبْيَضَ ix, to become white. (#  
مُبْيَضٌ).

بَيْضَةٌ (sjj), egg, sing

بَاعَ (a-i), to sell. (# بَائِعٌ &  
مَبِيعٌ).

بَيْنَ (zm/zz), between, e.g., جَلَسْتُ بَيْنَ حَامِدٍ  
وَبَلَالٍ, I sat between H and B. سَأَتِيكَ بَيْنَ الْوَاحِدَةِ  
وَالثَّانِيَةِ إِنْ شَاءَ اللَّهُ, I will come to you between  
one and two o'clock.

When used with a pronoun it should be repeated,  
e.g., هَذَا بَيْنِي وَبَيْنَكَ, 'this is between you and me.'

بَيَانٌ, elucidation, explanation, indication.

أَبَانَ يُبَيِّنُ إِبَانَةً (#  
مُبَيِّنٌ, manifest).

مُبَايِنٌ (#iii), different, alien.

بَدَلٌ مُبَايِنٌ (gr), a type of بَدَلٌ in which the second  
word is alien to the first, e.g., مَاتَ الْكَلْبُ الْقِطُّ, 'the  
dog – I mean the cat – is dead.' This type occurs  
only by mistake.

## ت

تَاءُ (تاء) the letter ت.

'by Allah' like وَاللَّهِ. In this sense it a *harf jarr*. It is used only with the name اللهُ, and the word رَبُّ as in تَرَبُّ الكَعْبَةِ by the Lord of the *Ka'bah*.

تَاءُ التَّأْنِيثِ, the round *tâ'* (ة) suffixed to feminine nouns.

تَانِكَ, those (*dual fem* declined like dual), e.g., طَالِبَتَانِ جَدِيدَتَانِ، أُدْرَسُ تَيْنِكَ الطَّالِبَتَيْنِ  
تَبَّ (a-i), to perish, be destroyed.

تَبِعَ زَيْدٌ بِلَالاً تَبِعاً (i-a), to follow.

وإِعْرَابٌ تَابِعٌ (*gr*), a noun without its own independent  
but following another in this respect, like نَعْتٌ،  
تَوَابِعُ pl، عَطْفٌ and بَدَلٌ، تَوْكِيدٌ.

تَتَابَعٌ تَتَابَعًا vi, to follow in succession.

تُجَارٌ pl، تَاجِرٌ (تجر).

مَتَّاجِرٌ, store, shop, *pl* مَتَّاجِرٌ.

تِجَارَةٌ, commerce, trade.

تَحْتٌ (zm), below, beneath, under.

مِنْ تَحْتِ كَذَا, underneath.

مَتَّاحِفٌ, museum, *pl* مَتَّاحِفٌ (smkiv).

تَحِيَّةٌ, greeting. See حَيٌّ.

تَذَكُّرَةٌ, ticket, *pl* تَذَاكِرٌ. See ذَكَرَ.

أُتْرَبَةٌ, dust, earth, *pl* أُتْرَابٌ (trb).

وَرَثٌ, legacy, inheritance. See وَرَثَةٌ.

مُتَرْجِمٌ (#), to translate. (rb), تَرْجَمَ تَرْجَمَةً (ترجم).  
(مُتَرْجِمٌ).

تَرَكَ (a-u), to leave, let be, renounce.

تُرْكِيٌّ, Turkey. تُرْكٌ (szz), Turks, *sing* تُرْكِيٌّ.

تِسْعَةٌ أَبْنَاءٍ، وَتِسْعُ بَنَاتٍ، e.g., تِسْعٌ (fem), nine, تِسْعَةٌ (تسع).

تِسْعَ عَشْرَةَ، e.g., تِسْعَةَ عَشْرَةَ، nineteen, fem تِسْعَةَ عَشْرَةَ.

تِسْعَةَ عَشْرَةَ طَالِبًا، وَتِسْعَ عَشْرَةَ طَالِبَةً.

أَتْسَاعٌ, one ninth, *pl* أَتْسَاعٌ.

تَاسِعٌ, ninth.

تِسْعُونَ, ninety, ninetieth.

تَعِبَ تَعَبًا (i-a), to be or become tired.

مُتْعَبٌ (&iv), tired, weary.

تَعَالَوْا, come!, pl. See علو.

تُفَاحَةٌ (sjj), apples, sing. (تفاح).

تِلْفَازٌ, television.

تَلْفَزُ يُتَلْفِزُ تَلْفِزَةً (rb), to telecast. (مُتَلْفِزٌ &).

تَلْمِيذٌ, pupil, pl. تَلَامِيذَةٌ, fem. تَلْمِيذَةٌ, pl. تَلْمِيذَاتٌ.

تَلَا (a-u), to recite (#) (التَّالِي) & تَلَا يُتَلَوُ تِلَاوَةً (تلو). (مُتَلَوٌّ).

تَلَا يُتَلَوُ تَلَوًّا (a-u), to follow, ensue.

السُّؤَالُ التَّالِي, the following question.

تَمَّ تَمَامًا (a-i), to be or become complete.

تَمَّ (gr), a verb which takes a (#), compete. فِعْلٌ تَامٌ.

فِعْلٌ نَاقِصٌ like دَخَلَ as opposed to فَاعِلٌ like

كَانَ like خَبَرَ and اسْمٌ.

مُسْتَثْنَى مِنْهُ (gr), sentence containing مُسْتَثْنَى مِنْهُ, e.g., زُرْتُ الْبِلَادَ كُلَّهَا إِلَّا الْيَابَانَ, I have visited all the countries except Japan. See مُفْرَغٌ

أَتَمَّ إِتْمَامًا iv, to make something complete. (# مُتِمَّ).

تَابَ يَتُوبُ تَوْبَةً (توب) (a-u), to repent (from sin). Note that man's turning to Allah's in repentance is تَابَ الْعَبْدُ إِلَى اللَّهِ, and Allah's turning to man with pardon and forgiveness is تَابَ اللَّهُ عَلَى الْعَبْدِ, and Allah is تَوَّابٌ (the Oft-Returning).

كَافُ الْخِطَابِ لِأَمِّ الْبُعْدِ (تي) (mb), that (with كَافُ الْخِطَابِ and لِأَمِّ الْبُعْدِ), that. تِلْكَ, that.

تَيْنَةٌ (sjj), figs, sing تَيْنٌ (تين).

## ث

(ثَأَبَ) تَشَاءَبَ تَشَاؤُبًا (ثَأَبَ) vi, to yawn.

(ثَبَّتَ) ثَبَّتَ ثُبُوتًا (ثَبَّتَ) (a-u), to stand firm, be unshakable.

ثَبَّبْتُ ثَبَّبْتُ ثَبْبِيَّتًا ii, to fix, consolidate, strengthen.

أَثَبْتُ إِثْبَاتًا iv, to confirm.

مُثَبِّتٌ (gr), affirmative (as opposed to مَنقِيٌّ, negative).

ثَعَابِيْنُ ثَعَابِيْنُ ثَعَابِيْنُ serpent, pl (ثَعَبَ).

ثَقَافِيٌّ ثَقَافِيٌّ ثَقَافِيٌّ culture, pl@. ثقَافَةٌ ثقَافَةٌ ثقَافَةٌ cultural.

(ثَقُلَ) ثَقُلَ ثِقَلًا (ثَقُلَ) (u-u), to be heavy.

ثَقِيْلٌ heavy.

نُونُ التَّوَكِيْدِ الثَّقِيْلَةُ (gr), the 'heavy' (doubled)

*nûn* of emphasis as in اجْلِسَنَّ as opposed to نُونُ

اجْلِسَنَّ or the 'light' (single) *nûn* as in اجْلِسَنَّ.

مِثْقَالٌ مِثْقَالٌ ذَرَّةٌ مِثْقَالٌ weight, مِثْقَالٌ ذَرَّةٌ, the weight of an atom.

ثَلَاثَةٌ أَبْنَاءٌ وَثَلَاثُ بَنَاتٍ، e.g., ثَلَاثٌ *fem*, three, ثَلَاثَةٌ (ثَلثُ)  
ثَلَاثَةٌ عَشْرٌ، e.g., ثَلَاثُ عَشْرَةَ thirteen, *fem* ثَلَاثَةٌ عَشْرَ  
طَالِبًا، وَثَلَاثُ عَشْرَةَ طَالِبَةً

ثَلثٌ *pl*، one third، ثَلثٌ، Note: ثَلثٌ سَاعَةً، twenty  
minutes.

ثَلَاثٌ (!)، in threes, three at a time.

ثُلَاثَاءُ، Tuesday.

ثَالِثٌ، third.

ثَلَاثُونَ، thirty, thirtieth.

ثَلَاثِيٌّ، having three elements. (gr) فَعْلٌ ثَلَاثِيٌّ، a verb  
with three radicals like قَبِلَ، سَلِمَ (as opposed to رُبَاعِيٌّ)

ثَلُوجٌ، ice, snow, *pl* ثَلُوجٌ (تَلَجٌ)

ثَلَاجَةٌ، refrigerator, *pl@*.

ثَمْرٌ، produce, yield (of a tree), *pl* of ثَمْرٌ is  
ثَمَرَاتٌ، and that of ثَمْرَةٌ is ثِمَارٌ.

ثُمَّ، then, e.g., أَكَلَ، ثُمَّ شَرِبَ، (hf) ثُمَّ (ثَمٌّ) ثُمَّ  
drank.

ثَمًّا، there. (zm) ثَمًّا، ثَمَّةً



ثَمَانِيَةٌ أُبْنَاءٌ، وَثَمَانِيٌّ، e.g., ثَمَانِيٌّ، eight, fem، ثَمَانِيَّةٌ (ثَمْن) (The fem form becomes ثَمَانٍ when not *mudâf*, nor has الـ، e.g., عِنْدِي ثَمَانٍ - (كَمْ رُوبِيَّةً عِنْدَكَ؟ - ثَمَانِيَّةً عَشْرَةَ، e.g., ثَمَانِيَّةٌ عَشْرَةَ، ثَمَانِيَّةٌ عَشْرَةَ طَالِبًا، وَثَمَانِيَّةٌ عَشْرَةَ طَالِبَةً. ثَامِنٌ، eighth.

ثَمَانُونَ، eighty, eightieth.

أَثْمَانٌ، price, pl، ثَمَنٌ.

اِثْنَانٍ، two, fem، اِثْنَانِ (ثْنِي). It is used in two ways: ① as an adjective following the *ma'dûd*, e.g., لِي ابْنَانِ اِثْنَانٍ، وَبِنْتَانِ اِثْنَانٍ.

② without the *ma'dûd*, e.g., كَمْ طَالِبًا غَابَ؟ -- غَابَ اِثْنَانِ.

وَمَثْنِي مَثْنِي. (!) مَثْنِي in twos, two at a time. in twos.

ثَنَّنِي يُثْنِي تَثْنِيَّةً، ii (gr) to turn a noun into dual. مَثْنِي (&) (gr), dual.

أَثْنِي عَلَى فُلَانٍ يُثْنِي iv, to praise.

تَنَاءٌ (sç), praise.

نَجَحَ x اسْتَثْنَى اسْتِثْنَاءً (gr), to except, e.g.,  
الطُّلَّابُ كُلُّهُمْ إِلَّا حَامِدًا  
Hamid.

مُسْتَثْنَى (gr), that which is excepted (حامد in  
the foregoing example).

مُسْتَثْنَى مِنْهُ (gr), that from which something  
is excepted (الطُّلَّابُ in the foregoing example).

اسْتِثْنَاءٌ (çx) (gr), exception.

أَدَاةُ الاسْتِثْنَاءِ (gr), the tool of exception (إِلَّا in  
the foregoing example).

ثَوَانٍ (pl) ثَوَانِيَّةٌ, second (division of a minute),  
(الثَّوَانِي).

مَدْرَسَةٌ ثَانَوِيَّةٌ, secondary school.

أَثْنَاءٌ as in فِي الدَّرْسِ, during.

ثِيَابٌ (pl) ثَوْبٌ, garment, clothes.

## ج

[جِبْرَائِيلُ], angel Jibra'il.

جَبَلٌ, mountain, *pl* جِبَالٌ.

جُبْنٌ, cheese. جُبْنَةٌ, a piece of cheese.

جُحْرٌ, hole (of a snake, etc), *pl* أَجْحَارٌ.

جَدِيدٌ, new, *pl* جُدُدٌ.

جَدٌّ, grandfather (both paternal as well as maternal),  
*pl* أَجْدَادٌ، وَجُدُودٌ.

جَدًّا, very, e.g., هَذَا جَمِيلٌ جَدًّا, this is very beautiful.

جِدَارٌ, wall, *pl* جُدُرٌ.

جَادَلَ مُجَادَلَةً، وَجَدَالًا (جدل) iii, to argue, debate.

جَدْوَلٌ, table (words arranged in a particular order), *pl* جَدَاوِلٌ.

[جُرْجٌ] (!!), George.

جَرَحَ جَرَحًا (جرح) (a-a), to wound.

جَرَحِيٌّ, wounded, *pl* جَرَحِيٌّ (!).

(جَرَدٌ) (*gr*) verb in its original form without additional letters like قَبِلَ as opposed to أَقْبَلَ، قَابَلَ، اسْتَقْبَلَ which are called مَزِيدٌ (augmented). It is either مُجَرَّدٌ like ثَلَاثِيٌّ مُجَرَّدٌ or رُبَاعِيٌّ مُجَرَّدٌ like طَمَّانٌ.

(جَرَّ) (a-u), to draw, pull (# جَارٌ & مَجْرُورٌ).

جَرٌّ (*gr*), one of the three cases of a noun in which it takes *kasrah* (-i) as the primary ending.

مَجْرُورٌ (*gr*) a noun with *kasrah* (-i) as the primary ending.

جَارٌ (*gr*) a particle like مِنْ، فِي which renders the following noun *majrûr* (also called حَرْفُ الْجَرِّ)<sup>1</sup>.

جَرَارٌ *jar, pl*، جَرَّةٌ.

أَجْرَاسٌ *bell, pl*، جَرَسٌ (جرس).

مُجْرِمٌ (# iv), criminal (جرم).

جَرَى يَجْرِي جَرِيًّا (جري) (a-i), to run, flow (river).

أَجْرِي اخْتِبَارًا يُجْرِي إِجْرَاءً iv, to conduct an examination.

---

<sup>1</sup> It is also rarely called خَائِضٌ.

جَوَارٍ (الجَوَارِي) girl, pl, جَارِيَةٌ.

أَجْزَاءٌ part, pl, جُزْءٌ (جزء).

جَزَمَ الفِعْلَ جَزْماً (a-i), to render a *mr* verb *majzûm*, i.e., drop the vowel of the last radical, e.g., لَمْ يَكْتُبْ → يَكْتُبُ (مَجْزُومٌ &).

جَوَازِمٌ word that renders a *mr* verb *majzûm*, pl جَازِمٌ.

جَزَى يَجْزِي جَزَاءً (جزي) (a-i), to reward, recompense, e.g., جَزَاكَ اللهُ خَيْرًا.

جُسُورٌ bridge, pl جُسْرٌ (جسر).

جَوَاسِيسٌ spy, pl جَاسُوسٌ (جسس).

تَجَسَّسَ تَجَسُّسًا v, to spy.

جَعَفِرٌ (جَعَاْفِرٌ) a rivulet (pl جَعَاْفِرٌ); a proper name.

جَعَلَ جَعْلًا (a-a) ❶ to make, i.e., make something into something. (In this sense it takes two objects which are جَعَلْتُ الْبَيْتَ وَخَبْرٌ, e.g., جَعَلْتُ الْبَيْتَ مَكْتَبَةً, I turned the house into library.). ❷ to think, deem. (In this sense also it takes two objects, e.g., أَجَعَلْتَنِي مُهَنْدِسًا?, have you made an engineer?,

i.e., do you think I am engineer?). ③ to begin. (In this sense it is a *sis/k*, and takes *اسْمٌ* and *خَبْرٌ*, e.g., *جَعَلَ الْمُدْرَسُ يَشْرِحُ الدَّرْسَ*, the teacher began to explain the lesson.). ④ to make, i.e., to create. (In this sense it takes only one object, e.g., *جَعَلَ اللَّهُ الشَّمْسَ وَالْقَمَرَ*, Allah made the sun and the moon.).

(جَفَفَ) (a-i), to become dry. (# جَافٌ).

قَلَمٌ جَافٌ, ball-point pen.

جَفَفَ تَجْفِيفًا ii, to make something dry.

تَجَافَى عَنِ الشَّيْءِ تَجَافِيًا (جَفَوْا) vi, to shun, avoid, keep away. See Q32:16, *تَجَافَى جُنُوبُهُمْ عَنِ الْمَضَاجِعِ*, 'Their sides shun (their) beds', i.e., they sleep very little.

جُلُودٌ (جَلَدٌ) skin, leather, *pl*.

جَلَدَ (a-i), to whip, flog.

جَلَدَ تَجْلِيدًا ii, to bind (a book).

مُجَلَّدٌ (&ii), bound (book), volume (book).

اجْلَوذَ اللَّيْلُ (جَلَذَ) xii, to last long, continue.

جَلَسَ جُلُوسًا (جَلَسَ) (a-i), to sit. (# جَالِسٌ, *pl* جُلُوسٌ).

أَجْلَسَ iv, to make someone sit.

أَجْلَاءٌ، أَجَلَةٌ pl, great, revered, جَلِيلٌ (جَلَل).

اللَّهُ، majesty. لَفِظُ الْجَلَالَةِ، جَلَالَةٌ.

أَجَلَّ iv, to honour.

مَجَلَّةٌ، magazine, journal, pl@.

وَأَنْجَلَى يَنْجَلِي أَنْجِلَاءً (جَلَو) to clear up.

جُمَادَى الْأُولَى (جَمَد) the fifth month of the Arabic lunar calendar.

جُمَادَى الْآخِرَةَ the sixth month of the Arabic lunar calendar.

جَمْرٌ، جَمْرَةٌ pl @, firebrand, embers, live coal, (جَمَر).

يُجَعُّ «كِتَابٌ» عَلَى «كُتُبٍ» (gr) to turn a noun into plural, e.g., (a-a) ① to gather. ② (gr) to turn a

جُمُوعٌ pl, (gr) plural, جَمْعٌ.

الْجَمْعُ السَّلَامُ (gr), sound plural.

جَمْعُ الْمَذَكَّرِ السَّلَامِ (gr), sound masculine plural.

جَمْعُ الْمُؤَنَّثِ السَّلَامِ (gr), sound feminine plural.

جَمْعُ التَّكْسِيرِ (gr), broken plural.

جَمَعُ الْجَمْعُ (gr) plural of plural, e.g.,

طُرُقَاتٌ → طُرُقٌ → طَرِيقٌ - أَمَاكِينُ → أَمْكِنَةٌ → مَكَانٌ

اجْتَمَعَ اجْتِمَاعًا iv, to come together, assemble, meet.

اجْتِمَاعٌ, meeting, pl@.

مُجْتَمَعٌ, society (organized community), pl@.

جَامِعَةٌ, university, pl@. Note: طَالِبٌ جَامِعِيٌّ, a university student

أَجْمَعُونَ (tawkîd) all. (It agrees with the *muwakkad* in

*i'râb*, e.g., نَجَحَ الطُّلَّابُ أَجْمَعُونَ, all the students have

passed. هَنَّنَاتُ الطُّلَّابَ أَجْمَعِينَ, I congratulated all

the students. سَلَّمْتُ الْجَوَائِزَ لِلطُّلَّابِ أَجْمَعِينَ, I gave away the prizes to all the students.)

يَوْمَ الْجُمُعَةِ, Friday.

جَمَاعَةٌ ① group, pl@. ② (gr) a group of men. وَأَوْ

الْجَمَاعَةَ, the pronoun وَ signifying 'they' (*masc*)

attached to the verb as in دَخَلُوا, they entered.

جَمَالٌ, he-camel, pl جمالٌ (جمل).

جَمِلَ جَمَالًا (u-u), to be beautiful.



جَمَائِلُ, beautiful, pl جُمَلَاءُ, fem جَمِيلَةٌ, pl@.

جُمَلَةٌ (gr), sentence, pl جُمَلٌ.

جُمَلَةٌ اسْمِيَّةٌ (gr) nominal sentence, i.e., a sentence commencing with a noun, e.g., بِلَالٌ خَرَجَ.

جُمَلَةٌ فِعْلِيَّةٌ (gr) verbal sentence, i.e., a sentence commencing with a verb, خَرَجَ بِلَالٌ.

جُمَلَةٌ مُفِيدَةٌ (gr) a complete sentence with an independent meaning.

شِبْهُ جُمَلَةٍ, a phrase consisting of a *jârr* and its *majrûr*, or a *zarf* and its *mudâf ilaihi*, e.g., فِي الْمَسْجِدِ، مَعَ الْإِمَامِ.

جَمٌّ (جَمَمٌ), abundant, abounding, great. See Q89:20, وَتُحِبُّونَ الْمَالَ حُبَّ جَمٍّ, 'And you love wealth with abounding love.'

أَجْنَبِيٌّ (جَنْبٌ), foreign.

اجْتَنَبَ اجْتِنَابًا viii, to avoid.

جُنُوبٌ, side (in the human body), pl جُنُوبٌ.

وَعَلَى جَنْبِهِ, lying on one's side, reclining. Note

وَيَذْكُرُونَ اللَّهَ قِيَمًا وَقُعُودًا وَعَلَىٰ جُنُوبِهِمْ Q3:191 'Those who remember Allah standing, sitting and reclining...'

أَجْنَحَةٌ, wing, *pl* جَنَاحٌ (جنح)

جُنُودٌ, soldier, *pl* جُنْدِيٌّ (جند)

أَجْنَاسٌ, genus, *pl* جِنْسٌ (جنس)

عَرَبٌ, generic noun, e.g., (gr) اسْمُ الْجِنْسِ الْجَمْعِيِّ, Arabs (عَرَبِيٌّ, an Arab); سَمَكٌ, fish (سَمَكَةٌ, one fish).

لَا النَّافِيَةَ لِلْجِنْسِ (gr) *lâ* of general negation, e.g., لَا إِلَهَ إِلَّا اللَّهُ, no god of any sort, any description deserves worship except Allah.

جَنَّةٌ, garden; Paradise, *pl@* (جنن)

جِنٌّ (sjj) *jinn* (invisible beings as opposed to *إنس*), *sing* جِنِّيٌّ.

ذُو جِنَّةٍ, mad. جِنَّةٌ, madness.

جُنَيْهٌ, pound (monetary unit), *pl@*.

جَاهَدَ مُجَاهِدَةً، وَجِهَادًا (جهد) iii, to strive.

اجْتَهَدَ اجْتِهَادًا viii, to strive, work hard. (# مُجْتَهِدٌ).

(جهل) (i-a), to be ignorant, not to know. (# جَاهِلٌ & مَجْهُولٌ).

الفِعْلُ الْمَبْنِيُّ لِلْمَجْهُولِ (gr) verb in the passive voice<sup>1</sup> (as opposed to الفِعْلُ الْمَبْنِيُّ لِلْمَعْلُومِ, verb in the active voice).

وَالْجَاهِلِيَّةُ, the Time of Ignorance preceding the advent of Islam.

(جهنم) (fem) (!), hell.

أَجَابَ عَنِ السُّؤَالِ يُجِيبُ إِجَابَةً (جواب) iv, to reply, answer (# مُجِيبٌ & مُجَابٌ).

اسْتَجَابَ اسْتِجَابَةً x, to answer (a prayer), grant (a request).

أَجْوَابَةٌ pl, reply, answer, جَوَابٌ.

جَوَابُ الشَّرْطِ (gr), the second part of a condition sentence which is in reply to the conditional verb, e.g., 'وَأِنْ تَذَهَبَ إِلَى الْمَكْتَبَةِ أَذْهَبُ مَعَكَ', 'if you go to the library, I will (also) go with you.' In this sentence جَوَابُ الشَّرْطِ is أَذْهَبُ and فِعْلُ الشَّرْطِ is تَذَهَبُ.

---

<sup>1</sup> It is called مَجْهُولٌ because the subject is not known.

جَوَابُ الْقَسَمِ (gr), the main statement that follows the oath, e.g., وَاللَّهِ لِأَحْفَظَنَّ الْقُرْآنَ الْكَرِيمَ, 'by Allah, I will memorize the Glorious Qur'an.' Here, وَاللَّهِ is قَسَمٌ and لِأَحْفَظَنَّ الْقُرْآنَ الْكَرِيمَ is جَوَابُ الْقَسَمِ.

ii, جَوَدٌ تَجْوِيداً (جود) to recite the Qur'an according to the rules of recitation. التَّجْوِيدُ, the rules of Qur'anic recitation.

iv, أَجَادَ يُجِيدُ إِجَادَةً, to do something very well, e.g., أَجِيدُ اللُّغَةَ الْعَرَبِيَّةَ, I know Arabic very well. أَتَجِيدُ القيادة؟, do you know driving well?

جِيرَانٌ pl جَارٌ (جور) neighbour,

جَوَائِزُ pl جَائِزَةٌ (جوز) prize,

جَوَازُ سَفَرٍ, passport, pl@.

جَازَ جَوَازاً (a-u), to be permissible.

iii, جَاوَزَ مُجَاوِزَةً, to leave behind, discard.

vi, تَجَاوَزَ تَجَاوِزاً, to go beyond, overstep, cross.

جَاعَ يَجُوعُ جَوْعاً (جوع) (a-u), to be or become hungry (# جَائِعٌ).

جُوعٌ, hunger.

جِيَاعٌ, hungry, fem جَوْعَى, pl\* جِيَاعٌ.

أَجْوَفُ (جوف) ① hollow. ② (gr) a verb with و or ي as the second radical, e.g., قَالَ قَوْلًا، سَارَ سَيْرًا. If the second radical is و, it is called أَجْوَفُ وَأَوِيُّ، and if it is ي, it is called أَجْوَفُ يَائِيٌّ. fem جَوْفَاءُ, pl\* جُوفٌ.

جَالَ جَوْلَةً (جول) (a-u), to roam, go round, rove.

مَجَالٌ (smk), domain, subject.

جَوَّلَ تَجْوِيلاً، وَتَجْوَالاً ii, to go round or travel excessively.

أَجْوَاءُ, weather, pl جَوٌّ (جوو).

جَاءَ يَجِيءُ مَجِيئاً (جاء) (a-i), to come. (It takes object, e.g., جَاءَنِي بِلَالٌ, Bilal came to me.

جَاءَ بِكِتَابِهِ, to bring, e.g., مَا جَاءَ بِلَالٌ بِكِتَابِهِ, Bilal did not bring his book.

① جَيْبٌ (جيب) (classical Arabic) neck and bosom opening of a shirt. See Q27:12, وَأَدْخِلْ يَدَكَ فِي جَيْبِكَ تَخْرُجَ بَيْضًا مِنْ غَيْرِ سَوْءٍ , 'And put your hand into the bosom opening (of your shirt), it will come forth white (and shining) without hurt.' ② (modern Arabic), pocket, *pl*\* جُيُوبٌ.

## ح

وَحَادِيَةَ عَشْرَةَ *fem* eleventh, حَادِي عَشَرَ (حدي)  
السَّاعَةُ الحَادِيَةَ عَشْرَةَ, eleventh day, أَيَوْمُ الحَادِي عَشَرَ  
11 a.m. *See* وحد.

love. حُبُّ iv, أَحَبَّ يُحِبُّ (حِبِّب).

ii, to make someone like something, to endear, e.g., حَبَّبَ  
وَالِيَّ هَذَا المُدْرِسُ اللُّغَةَ العَرَبِيَّةَ this teacher has made  
me love Arabic.

(& اسْتَحَبَّ اسْتَحَبَّابًا x (*fq*), be desirable. (مُسْتَحَبُّ).

حبُّ (*sjj*) grain, *sing* حَبَّةٌ, *pl* حَبُوبٌ.

أَحْبَارٌ *pl* ink, حَبْرٌ (حبر).

قَلَمٌ حَبْرِيٌّ fountain-pen.

حَبَالٌ *pl* rope, حَبْلٌ (حبل).

حَبَالِيٌّ pregnant, *pl* حَبَالِيٌّ.

سَلَّمَ هِيَ حَتَّى مَطْلَعِ الْفَجْرِ (hj), till, until, e.g., ① حَتَّى (حتى)  
'It is peace till the break of dawn.' (Q97:5). ② (hj) so  
that, e.g., سَأَلْتُكَ أَسْئَلَةً كَثِيرَةً حَتَّى أَفْهَمَ الْمَسْأَلَةَ تَمَامَ الْفَهْمِ, I  
asked you several questions so that I might  
understand the matter completely. ③ even, e.g., حَتَّى  
الطِّفْلُ يَعْرِفُ هَذَا, even a child knows this.

حَتَّ حَتًّا (a-u), to urge, goad, prompt.

حَجَّ حَجًّا (a-u), to perform *hajj*.

حُجَّاجٌ, pilgrim, *pl*.

أَحْجَارٌ, حِجَارَةٌ (a-u), stone, *pl*.

حُجْرَاتٌ (a-u), room, *pl*.

أَحْجَامٌ (a-u), size, *pl*.

مَحَاجِنٌ (a-u), staff with a bent end, *pl*.

حَدَثَ حَدُوثًا (a-u), to happen, occur.

حَدَثٌ (a-u) action of a verb.

حَادِثٌ (a-u), accident, *pl*.

حَدَّثَنِي (a-u), to speak to, tell, e.g., he  
spoke to me.



تَحَدَّثَ إِلَيَّ, he spoke to me.

حَدِيثٌ, speech, talk; *hadith* (narrative relating the deeds and utterances of the Prophet and his companions), *pl* أَحَادِيثُ.

حَدِيثٌ عَهْدٍ بِالْإِسْلَامِ, new, fresh, e.g., حَدِيثٌ عَهْدٍ بِكَذَا, newly converted to Islam, حَدِيثٌ عَهْدٍ بِالزَّوْجِ, newly married.

مُحَدَّثَاتُ الْأُمُورِ, religious practices and beliefs not based on the teachings of the Qur'an and the *Sunnah*, but invented after the time of the Prophet صَلَّى اللهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ.

مُحَدِّثٌ (#ii), one who collects, reports and transmits the *hadith*, *pl*~.

حَادٌ (حَدَدٌ), sharp.

حَدِيدٌ, iron (metal). سُورَةُ الْحَدِيدِ, name of the 57<sup>th</sup> *sûrah*.

حَذَرَ تَحْذِيرًا (حِذْرًا), to warn, caution.

تَحْذِيرٌ (gr), to warn someone using the expression  
... وَإِيَّاكَ وَ... e.g., وَإِيَّاكَ وَذَاكَ الرَّجُلَ يَا بِلَالَ, Bilal, beware of  
that man!

حَدَائِقُ pl حَدِيقَةٌ, garden, (حَدَق)

حَدِيقَةُ الْحَيَوَانَاتِ, zoological garden.

حَذِرَ حَذَرًا (i-a), to be cautious, to fear.

حَذِرٌ, cautious.

حَذَفَ حَذْفًا (a-i), to omit.

أَحْذِيَةٌ pl حِذَاءٌ, shoe, (حَذَو)

حَرْبٌ عَالَمِيَّةٌ, world war, (حَرْب) حَرْبٌ  
حَرْبٌ أَهْلِيَّةٌ, civil war, pl حُرُوبٌ.

حَارَبَ مُحَارَبَةً iii, to combat, wage war.

مِحْرَابٌ, place in the mosque where the imam stands  
to lead the congregation in prayer, pl مَحَارِبٌ.

حَرَتَ حَرْثًا (a-u), to plough.

مَحَارِثٌ pl مِحْرَاتٌ, plough,

حَرْثٌ, tillage, cultivation.

اِحْرَنْجَمَ اِحْرَنْجَامًا (حرجم) (*rbiv*), to come together,  
gather.

حَارٌّ (حرر), hot.

حَرٌّ, heat.

حَرَارَةٌ, heat.

حَرِيرٌ, silk.

ن، ك، ي letter of the alphabet like (*gr*) ① (حرف)

لم، لا، ② word other than a noun or a verb such as

حُرُوفٌ *pl\**. في، من، إن، أ، سـ

أَحْرَقَتِ النَّارُ مُعْظَمَ (حرق) iv, to burn, e.g.,

الْكُتُبِ, the fire burnt most of the books.

اِحْتَرَقَ اِحْتِرَاقًا viii (*mt*), to burn, get burnt, e.g.,

اِحْتَرَقَتِ السَّيَّارَةُ, the car was burnt.

حَرَكَةٌ ① movement. ② (*gr*) short vowel,

vowel-sign such as *fathaḥ*, *dammaḥ*, *kasraḥ*. *pl\**

حَرَكَاتٌ.

حَرَّكَ الْمَرِيضُ يَدَهُ ii ① to move, e.g.,

the patient moved his hand. ② (*gr*) to pronounce a letter  
with a vowel.

تَحَرَّكَ تَحَرُّكًا v, to move, be in motion.

حَرْفٌ مُتَحَرِّكٌ, a letter pronounced with a vowel such as نَ، كِ (as opposed to حَرْفٌ سَاكِنٌ, i.e., a letter pronounced without a vowel like نٌ and مٌ in كُنْتُمْ).

حَرَامٌ ① forbidden, unlawful. ② sacred as in الْمَسْجِدُ الْحَرَامُ. ③ pilgrim in the state of *ihrâm*, pl حُرَمٌ.

حَرَّمَ تَحْرِيمًا ii, to make something unlawful. (& مُحَرَّمٌ).

أَحْرَمَ إِحْرَامًا iv, to enter into the state of *ihrâm*.

مُحْرِمٌ (# iv), pilgrim in the state of *ihrâm*, pl ~.

أَحْتَرَمَ احْتِرَامًا viii, to honour, respect.

الْمُحَرَّمُ, the first month of the Arabic lunar calendar.

ذُو مَحْرَمٍ, husband, or a relation with whom marriage cannot be contracted.

أَحْزَابٌ, group, (political) party, pl حِزْبٌ (حزب).

(حَزِنٌ #) (i-a), to be sad (حَزِنٌ #),  
(حَزِينٌ).

(حَسِبَ حِسْبَانَا) (i-a), to think, consider. (Takes  
two objects which are originally مُبْتَدَأٌ and حَبْرٌ, e.g.,  
حَسِبْتُ بِلَالاً فَقِيراً → بِلَالٌ فَقِيرٌ,  
I thought Bilal was  
poor.)

viii ① اِحْتَسَبَ اِحْتِسَاباً to do something to please  
Allah. ② to expect.

iii, حَاسَبٌ مُحَاسَبَةً، وَحِسَاباً to call to account.

يَوْمُ الْحِسَابِ, the Day of Reckoning.

(حَسَدٌ) (a-u/i), to be jealous.

حَسَدٌ, jealousy, envy.

(حَسَنٌ) (u-u), to be beautiful, good.

حَسَنٌ, good, excellent, pl حَسَانٌ.

حَسَنَةٌ, good deed, good thing, pl@.

أَحْسَنْتَ, well done! bravo!

(حَشْرَةٌ) حَشْرَةٌ, insect, pl@.

(حَشْفٌ) حَشْفٌ, the most inferior kind of dates.

(حصد) حَصَدَ حَصْدًا (a-i/u), to harvest, reap.

(حصص) حَصَّصَ، period (in an educational institution), pl. حَصَصٌ.

(حصل) حَصَلَ عَلَى الشَّيْءِ حُصُولًا (a-u), to obtain, get.

(حصن) حَصَّنَ، أَحْصَنَةً، horse, pl حِصَانٌ (حصن).

(حضر) حَضَرَ حُضُورًا (a-u), to attend, be present.

أَحْضَرَ إِحْضَارًا iv, to bring, fetch.

مُحَاضِرٌ (# iii), lecturer (at a university), pl~.

(حطب) حَطَبٌ، firewood.

(حطط) مَحَطَّةٌ، (railway) station, bus-stop, pl@.

(حفيد) حَفِيدٌ، grandson, pl حَفَدَاءُ، حَفَدَةٌ.

(حفظ) حَفِظَ حِفْظًا (i-a), to memorize, protect.

حَافِظٌ، one who knows the Qur'an by heart, pl حُفَاظٌ.

حَفَّظَ تَحْفِيزًا ii, to help someone memorize (the Qur'an).

مَحَافِظٌ، wallet, pl مَحْفَظَةٌ.

(حافلة) حَافِلَةٌ، bus, pl@.

حَفْلٌ, meeting for celebration. حَفْلُ الشَّايِ, tea party.

(حفي) حَفِيَ يَحْفِي حَفَاءً (i-a), to walk barefoot.

حُفَاةٌ (حافي) حَافٍ (#), barefoot, *pl*.

حَقَائِبٌ (حقب) حَقِيبَةٌ, bag, suitcase, valise, *pl*.

حُقُوقٌ (حقق) حَقٌّ, truth, right, *pl*.

حَقَّ لَهُ أَنْ يَفْعَلَ كَذَا (a-i), to be entitled to do, have the right to do.

حَقٌّ (أحقُّ) حَقِيقٌ, deserving. (\$).

حَقَائِقٌ (حقيقة) حَقِيقَةٌ, truth, reality, true nature, *pl*.

حُقُولٌ (حقل) حَقْلٌ, field, *pl*.

حَاكٌّ (حكك) حَاكٌّ حَاكًا (a-u), to rub, scratch.

مِحَاكٌ, touchstone.

حَاكِمٌ (حكم) حَاكِمٌ حَاكِمًا (a-u), to judge. (#).

مَحْكَمَةٌ (smk) مَحْكَمَةٌ, law court.

حُكُومَةٌ, government, *pl@*.

أَحْكَامٌ (حكم) حُكْمٌ, judgment, ruling, provision of a rule, *pl*.

حَلَبٌ (حلب) حَلَبٌ حَلْبًا (a-u), to milk.

مَحَالِبٌ, milking can, *pl* مَحَالِبٌ.

حَلَقَ حَلَقًا (a-i), to shave.

حَلَّاقٌ, barber.

حَلَّ حُلُولًا, ② (a-u) حَلَّ حَلًّا ①, to untie a knot.

وَحَلَّ, to alight, halt, stay.

رَافَقَكَ اللهُ فِي الْحَلِّ وَالْتَّرْحَالِ, may Allah be your Companion during your stay, and while you are traveling.

مَحَلٌّ (smk②) ① store, shop, *pl@*. ② (*gr*) in stating the إِعْرَابُ of a *mb* noun it is said to be فِي مَحَلٍّ, i.e., in the position of *raf'* etc, as a *mb* noun has no endings, but if it is replaced by a مَعْرَبٌ noun, it will be مَرْفُوعٌ or مَنصُوبٌ or مَجْرُورٌ.

This applies to the إِعْرَابُ of a sentence and *çmw* as well.

حَلَا يَحْلُو حَلَاوَةً (a-u), to be sweet.

حُلُوٌّ, sweet.

حَلَاوَى (!), sweetmeat, *pl* حَلَاوَى (!).

حَلِيٌّ, piece of ornament, *pl* حَلِيٌّ.



حَلَّى الْجَارِيَةَ تَحْلِيَةً ii, to adorn the girl with ornaments.

مُحَلَّى (!!) (&), adorned with ornaments.

اسْمٌ مُحَلَّى بِـ ال (gr), a noun adorned with the definite article *al-*. (= a noun with *al-* prefixed to it).

تَحَلَّى v, to be adorned with ornaments. تَحَلَّى

الاسْمِ بِـ ال (gr), to take the definite article *al-*.

حَمِدَ حَمْدًا (حمد) (i-a), to praise.

حَمِدَ تَحْمِيدًا ii, to praise excessively. (مُحَمَّدٌ &).

حُمُرٌ\* pl, حَمْرَاءُ fem, red, أَحْمَرُ (حمر).

أَحْمَرَّ أَحْمَرًا ix, to turn red, redden. (مُحْمَرٌ #).

أَحْمَرَّ يَحْمَرُّ أَحْمِيرًا ixa, to turn red gradually.

حَمِيرٌ, حُمُرٌ pl, donkey, حِمَارٌ.

أَحْمَقُ (حمق), stupid, foolish, pl حَمَقَى.

حَمَلَ حَمْلًا (حمل) (a-i), to carry.

حَمَلَ السَّلَاحَ عَلَى فُلَانٍ, to carry weapon against someone.

أَحْتَمَلَ أَحْتِمَالًا viii, to be probable.

أَحْتِمَالٌ (حتمال) (çviii), possibility, probability.

(حَمَّامٌ) bathroom, *pl@*.

اسْتَحَمَّ اسْتِحْمَامًا x, to take a bath.

(حُمَّى) (*fem*), fever, *pl@* (!) حُمَّى.

حَاجَةٌ, need, necessity, requirement, *pl@*,

حَوَائِجُ.

أَحْتَاجُ إِلَى الشَّيْءِ يَحْتَاجُ احْتِيَاجًا, to be in need, e.g., وَأَحْتَاجُ إِلَى مُعْجَمٍ, I need a dictionary.

حُورٌ *pl\**, حُورَاءُ *fem*, dark-eyed, وَأَخْوَرُ (حور).

كَيْفَ ① condition, state, situation, e.g., حَالٌ (حول).

حَالُكَ؟, how do you do? ② (*gr*) a noun, sentence or

phrase describing the circumstance of the action

contained in the main sentence, e.g., قَالَ بِلَالٌ ضَاكِحًا,

B said laughing. جَاءَ الْوَلَدُ وَهُوَ يَبْكِي, the boy came

crying. أَحْوَالٌ *pl\**.

حَوَّلَ الشَّيْءَ إِلَى كَذَا تَحْوِيلًا ii, to change, transform, transfer.

حَاوَلَ مُحَاوَلَةً iii, to try.

اِسْتِحَالٌ اِسْتِحَالَةٌ x, to be impossible. (#  
مُسْتَحِيلٌ).

حُورٌ, *pl\** حَوْرَاءٌ, *fem* squint-eyed, وَأَحْوَالٌ.

مَحَالَةٌ, stratagem, device. لَا مَحَالَةَ مِنْ ذَلِكَ, it is inevitable, it is certain.

حَوَى يَحْوِي حَوَايَةً (حوي) (a-i), to contain.

حَيْثُ (*zm*), where (followed by nominal or verbal sentence as *mudâf ilahi*), e.g., اجْلِسْ حَيْثُ زُمَلَاؤُكَ, sit where your classmates are sitting. (nominal sentence).

وَقِفْ حَيْثُ تَرَاهُ وَلَا يَرَاكَ, Stand where you can see him and he cannot see you. (verbal sentence).

حَانَ حَانٌ حَانُونَ (حين) (a-i), draw near, arrive (time of doing something), e.g., حَانَ وَقْتُ الصَّلَاةِ, it is time for *ḥalâḥ*.

أَحْيَانٌ, *pl+* أَحْيَانٌ, *pl* حِينٌ, time, period of time,

حِينَ (*zz*), when, at the time when, e.g., رَأَيْتُهُ حِينَ

دَخَلَ الْمَسْجِدَ, I saw him when he entered the mosque.

أَحْيَانًا (zz), sometimes, e.g., أَزُورُهُ أَحْيَانًا, I visit him occasionally.

(حَيَّ) يَحْيَا حَيَاةً (حَيَّ) (i-a), to live, be alive.

See Q87:13, ثُمَّ لَا يَمُوتُ فِيهَا وَلَا يَحْيَى , 'He will neither die therein nor live'.

حَيَّ يُحَيِّي تَحِيَّةً ii, to greet.

تَحِيَّةً, greeting, pl@.

أَحْيَا يُحْيِي إِحْيَاءً iv, to give life.

اسْتَحْيَا يَسْتَحْيِي اسْتِحْيَاءً x, to be shy, embarrassed, ashamed.

حِيَاءً, shyness.

أَحْيَاءُ, living, alive, pl حَيَّ.

أَحْيَاءُ, city district, pl حَيَّ.

حَيَّةً, snake, pl@.

حَيَّوَانٌ, animal, pl@.

# خ

(خبر) ① news, information. ② (*gr*) the predicate of a nominal sentence, e.g., بلالٌ طالبٌ، بلالٌ

أخبارٌ\* *pl*. خرجَ

أخبرَ إخباراً *iv*, to inform.

اختبرَ اختباراً *viii*, to test, examine.

ختمَ ختماً (*a-i*), to close, finish, end, seal. (& مَخْتُومٌ).

(*gr*), a noun ending in extra *alif* and *nûn* like مَرَوَانٌ، عُمَانٌ، رَمَضَانٌ.

خرجَ خروجاً (*a-u*), to go out.

خارجَ المَكْتَبَةِ، خارجَ (*zz*), outside, e.g., خارجَ library.

مَخْرَجٌ، exit, way out (from a difficult situation),

escape, *pl* مَخَارِجٌ.

تَخْرَجُ فِي الْجَامِعَةِ تَخْرُجًا v, to graduate, pass out. (#  
متَخَرِّجٌ, *pl~*).

وَجَرِيحٌ, graduate, *pl~*.

اسْتَخْرَجَ اسْتِخْرَاجًا x, to extract, take out.

وخبزٌ (خبز) bread.

مخبزٌ (*smk*), bakery, *pl* مَخَابِزُ.

وَحَاتِمٌ (ختم) خَوَاتِمٌ, ring (worn on a finger), *pl*.

وَحَدٌّ (خد) خُدُودٌ, cheek, *pl*.

مِخْدَةٌ, pillow (as the cheek is placed on it), *pl* مَخَادٌ.

وَحَدْمَةٌ (خدم) خَدَمٌ (a-u/a-i), to serve.

وَحَادِمَةٌ (fem also خَادِمَةٌ, *pl* خَادِمٌ (*pl@*), servant, *pl*).

وَحَرَائِطٌ (خرط) خَرِيطَةٌ, map, *pl*.

وَحَشَبٌ (خشب) خَشَبٌ, wood, timber.

وَحَشِيَ خَشْيَةً (خشي) خَشِيَ (i-a), to fear, be afraid.

وَحَصٌّ خُصُوصًا (خصص) حَصٌّ (a-u), to concern, have  
relevance. (# خَاصٌّ), e.g., يَجْلِسُ كُلُّ طَالِبٍ فِي الْمَقْعَدِ

الخاصَّ بِهِ, each student should sit in the seat meant for him.

ii ① خَصَّصَ تَخْصِيصًا ② to set aside, particularize.

(gr), to reduce the indefiniteness of a نَكْرَةٌ by qualifying it with an adjective or by adding a *nakirah mudâf ilaih*, e.g., بَيْتٌ جَدِيدٌ / بَيْتٌ رَجُلٍ.

viii, to concern, be peculiar to. (# مُخْتَصٌّ).

(gr) to use a *mançûb* noun (called مَخْصُوصٌ) after the pronoun نَحْنُ, e.g., نَحْنُ الْحُجَّاجُ الْأَمْرِيكَانَ, we the American *hajis* arrived yesterday.

خِصَالٌ, attribute, nature, habit, pl خِصَالٌ.

خَضِرٌ\* pl, خَضِرَاءُ fem, green, أَخْضَرُ (خَضِر).

ix, to become green. (# مُخْضَرٌ).

(i-a), to sin. خَطِيئَةٌ خَطِيئَةً (خطأ).

خطايا pl, sin, خَطِيئَةٌ.

iv, to make a mistake. أَخْطَأَ.

خطأ pl, mistake, أَخْطَاءٌ.

(خطب) ① to deliver a sermon. ②

خطب خطبة, to ask for a girl's hand in marriage.

خطب مخاطبة iii, to address, talk, speak, direct one's words. (# مخاطب, & مخاطب).

مخاطب ① person spoken to. ② (gr), second person (you).

خطاب, letter, pl@.

خطير, dangerous.

خط ① handwriting, style of writing. ② line, pl خطوط.

خطوط جوية, airlines.

خطوة, step, pl@ (خطوات).

خفيف, light (in weight).

خفف تخفيفاً ii ① to lighten; reduce (speed). ② (gr) to pronounce a letter without *shaddah*, e.g., لَكِنَّ → لَكِنْ.

نون التوكيد الخفيفة (gr), the 'light' (single) *nûn* of emphasis as in أَنْزَلْنِ. See الثَّيْلَةُ.



مَخَالِبٌ <sup>pl</sup> claw, talon, مِخْلَبٌ <sup>cl</sup> (خلب)

خَالِدٌ (#) خَلَدَ خُلُوداً (a-u), to remain forever.

خُلُودٌ, immortality, eternal life.

مُخْلُوطٌ (&) خَلَطَ الشَّيْءَ بغيرِهِ خَلْطاً (خلط)

مُخْتَلِطٌ (#) اختلطَ اختلاطاً VIII (mt of i), to be mixed.

خَلَعَ خَلْعاً (a-a), to take off (shoes, dress ...).

انْخَلَعَ انْخِلاَعاً VII, to be dislodged.

خَلْفَ (zmk) خَلْفَ (خلف)

تَخَلَّفَ عَنِ الْأَمْرِ تَخَلُّفاً V, to stay away, fail to take part.

مُخْتَلِفٌ (#) اختلفَ اختلافاً VIII, to differ.

خَلِيفَةٌ, successor (of the Prophet صَلَّى اللهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ), <sup>pl</sup>

خُلَفَاءُ

خِلَافٌ, difference of opinion.

خَلَقَ خَلْقاً (a-u) to create.

أَخْلَاقٌ <sup>pl</sup> manners, character, خُلُقٌ

أَخِيَاءٌ، خُلَانٌ <sup>pl</sup> bosom friend, خَلِيلٌ (خلل)

خَلَا يَخْلُو خُلُوءًا (خلو) (a-u), to be empty, vacant. (#  
(خَالٍ (الخالي).

خَلَا (followed by a *mançûb* noun), except.

خَمْسَةٌ أَبْنَاءٌ، e.g., خَمْسٌ، five, fem خَمْسَةٌ (خمسة)  
وخمسٌ بناتٍ.

خَمْسَةَ عَشَرَ، e.g., خَمْسَ عَشْرَةَ، fifteen, fem خَمْسَةَ عَشَرَ  
طالباً، وخمسة عشرة طالبةً.

أَخْمَاسٌ، one fifth, pl خُمُسٌ.

خَامِسٌ، fifth.

يَوْمُ الْخَمِيسِ، Thursday.

خَمْسُونَ، fifty, fiftieth.

خَنْدَقٌ (خندق)، trench, the Battle of Trench.

خِنَاصِرٌ (fem), little finger, pl خِنَاصِرٌ (خنصر).

خَافَ يَخَافُ خَوْفًا، وَمَخَافَةً (خوف) (i-a), to fear, be  
afraid of.

خَوَّفَ تَخْوِيفًا ii, to frighten, scare, fill someone with  
fear.

أَخْوَالٌ، fem خَالَةٌ، pl@. خَالٌ (خول) maternal uncle,

خَوَى خَوَاءً (a-i), to be empty.<sup>1</sup>

بِحَيْرٍ well, ① خَيْرٌ (خير) goodness (opposite of شَرٌّ),

أَنَا بِحَيْرٍ I am well, ② better (for أَخَيْرٌ), e.g., لَيْلَةُ الْقَدْرِ

وَأَخَيْرٌ مِنْ أَلْفِ شَهْرٍ, 'The Night of Power is better than a thousand nights' (Q97:3).

اخْتَارَ يَخْتَارُ اخْتِيَارًا viii, to select, choose.

(مُخْتَارٌ & #).

خَيْطٌ thread, pl خَيْوُطٌ (خيطة).

خِيَاطٌ, needle. See Q7:40, وَلَا يَدْخُلُونَ الْجَنَّةَ حَتَّى يَلِجَ الْجَمَلُ فِي

سِمِّ الْخِيَاطِ, '...they will not enter Paradise until the camel goes through the needle's eye.'

خِيَامٌ tent, pl خِيَمَةٌ (خيم).

خَيَّمَ يَخِيْمُ ii, to camp (in tents).

مُخَيَّمٌ الشباب (smkii), camp, pl@. مُخَيَّمٌ youth camp.

---

<sup>1</sup> Q2:259: (or like the one who passed by a township which was empty and desolate and had fallen on its roofs...). The preposition عَلَى suggests that the word ساقطة is understood.

## د

(دَأَبُ) دَأَبٌ, habit. Note: هَذَا دَأَبُهُ وَيَدُّنُهُ, this is his habit.

(دَحْرَجَ) دَحْرَجَ دَحْرَجَةً (rb), to roll.

تَدَحْرَجُ تَدَحْرَجًا (rbii) (mt of i), to roll (by itself), e.g.,  
دَحْرَجْتُ الْحَجَرَ، فَتَدَحْرَجَ, I set the stone rolling,  
and it rolled.

دَجَاجَةٌ (sjj) chickens, sing دَجَاجٌ.

(دَخَلَ) دَخَلَ الْبَيْتَ دُخُولًا (a-u), to enter. (If the object is not a place, or is a place but not suitable for normal entry, it takes فِي, e.g. دَخَلْتُ فِي الْإِسْلَامِ / فِي (الامْتِحَانِ، أَدْخَلْتُ يَدَيَّ فِي جَيْبِي).

دَخَلَ عَلَى فُلَانٍ, to enter the place where someone is in, e.g., دَخَلْتُ عَلَى الْمُدِيرِ, I entered the director's office while he was there (i.e., I went to see the director in his office).

أَدْخِنَةٌ (دخن) دُخَانٌ, smoke, pl

دَخَنَ ii, to smoke (a cigarette). (مُدَخِّنٌ #).

دَابُّ (دَدَن) دَابُّ, habit. See دَابُّ (دَدَن)

دَرَّاجَةٌ (دَرَج) bicycle, pl@.

دَرَجَةٌ, mark (obtained in the examination), pl@.

أَدْرَاجٌ (دُرَج) drawer (of a table), pl@.

دَرَسَ (a-u) دَرَسَ دَرَسًا، وَدَرَّاسَةً (دَرَس) to study.

دَرَسَ ii، دَرَسَ فُلَانًا تَدْرِيسًا to teach.

مُدَّرِّسٌ، teacher, pl~, fem مُدَّرِّسَةٌ pl@.

دُرُوسٌ lesson, pl دَرَسٌ.

مَدْرَسَةٌ، school, pl مَدَارِسٌ. Note: مَعْجَمٌ مَدْرَسِيٌّ، school dictionary, i.e., meant for school children.

الدَّرَاسَاتُ الْعُلْيَا، higher studies. دَرَّاسَةٌ، study, pl@.

أَدْرَكَ إِدْرَاكًا (دَرَك) iv، to overtake, catch up.

اسْتَدْرَاكٌ (gr) (cx) اسْتَدْرَاكٌ rectification, correction. (The

particle لَكِنَّ denotes اسْتَدْرَاكٌ. When we read the

sentence سَيَّارَتِي قَدِيمَةٌ، we may think that this car

is useless, but the next sentence لَكِنَّهَا جَيِّدَةٌ

corrects this impression.)

دَرَاهِمٌ، an ancient silver coin, pl دَرَاهِمٌ (دَرِهَم).

دَرَى يَدْرِى دِرَايَةً (دري) (a-i), to know.

أَدْرَى يُدْرِى إِدْرَاءً iv, inform, notify, let know.

مَا أَدْرَاكَ أَنَّهُ مَرِيضٌ؟, how do you know he is sick? (lit. what informed you ...).

دُسَاتِيرٌ دُسْتُورٌ (دستر), constitution (law), pl

دَعَا يَدْعُو دُعَاءً (دعو) (a-u), to call, invite, invoke God, pray.

دَعْوَةٌ, prayer, supplication, pl@ (دَعَوَاتٌ).

دُعَاءٌ, call, invocation of God, supplication, prayer, pl

أَدْعِيَةٌ.

دَاعٍ (#) ❶ one who invites, one who calls people to

God, pl دُعَاةٌ. ❷ reason, cause, e.g., لَا دَاعِيَّ لِلْخَوْفِ, there is no need to panic.

ادَّعَى ادِّعَاءً viii, to lay claim, allege.

دَغَدَغَ دَغْدَغَةً (دغدغ) (rb), to tickle.

أَدْغَمَ إِدْغَامًا (دغم) vi (gr) to merge a letter with another, assimilate.

دَفَاتِرٌ دَفْتَرٌ (دفتر) (pl), notebook, pl

دَفَعَ دَفْعًا (a-a), to pay; to push, to get rid of.

دَفَنَ دَفْنًا (a-i), to bury.

دَقِيقٌ, flour.

دَقِيقَةٌ, minute, *pl* دَقَائِقٌ.

دُكْتُورٌ (دكتور), Dr (holder of Ph.D. degree),  
physician, *pl* دَكَاتِرَةٌ.

دُكَّانٌ (دكان), shop, store, *pl* دَكَاكِينٌ.

دُولَارٌ (دلار), dollar, *pl* دُولَارَاتٌ.

دَلَّ عَلَى الشَّيْءِ دَلَالَةً (دل), to show,  
demonstrate, point out, direct, signify, indicate.

دِيمَاسٌ<sup>1</sup> (دمس), *pl* دَمَامِيسٌ, dungeon.

دِمَشْقٌ (دمشق), Damascus.

دِمَاءٌ (دمي), blood, *pl* دِمَاءٌ.

دَيْنَارٌ (دندر), an ancient gold coin, *pl* دَنَانِيرٌ.

أَدْنَسٌ (دنس), dirt, filth, *pl* أَدْنَسٌ.

دَنَا دُنُوًّا (a-u), to be close, to move near.

---

<sup>1</sup> A rarely used word.

دَانِ (#), near, close. أَذْنَى (\$), nearer, closer, closest, fem دُنْيَا. Note: الْحَيَاةُ الدُّنْيَا, the nearest life, the life of this world. (!) دُنْيَا, the world.

دُهُورٌ<sup>1</sup> pl دَهْرٌ, time, eternity, (دهر)

ixā, to become dark green. (مُدْهَمٌ #). (دهم)

أَدْوَاءٌ<sup>1</sup> pl دَاءٌ, disease, (دواء)

دَارٌ يَدُورُ دَوْرًا (دور), to turn.

iv, to make something turn, to set things going, to direct. (مُدِيرٌ #, director, pl~).

دُورٌ, vertigo, giddiness.

دَوْلٌ<sup>1</sup> pl دَوْلَةٌ, state, country, (دول)

(دَائِمٌ #) دَامَ يَدُومُ دَوَامًا (دوم) (a-u), to last, continue

دَائِمًا (zz), always.

دُونَ (دون) (zz), without. قُتِلَ دُونَ مَالِهِ, he was killed defending his wealth.

---

<sup>1</sup> See Q45:24.



دَوَاوِينُ <sup>١٤</sup> anthology, collection of poems, *pl* دَوَاوِينُ <sup>١٤</sup>.

أَدْوِيَةٌ <sup>١٤</sup> medicine, *pl* دَوَاءٌ (دوي).

دِيَبَاجٌ (ديج) silk brocade.

دِدْنٌ [دِيدَنٌ] *see* دِدْنٌ.

دِيُوكٌ، دِيَكَةٌ <sup>١٤</sup> rooster, *pl* دِيَكٌ (ديك).

أَدْيَانٌ <sup>١٤</sup> religion, *pl* دِينٌ (دين).

## ذ

(ذَا) (with the هَاءُ التَّنْبِيهِ) (mb), this, fem هَذِهِ (mb), pl\* هَؤُلَاءِ (mb).

ذَلِكَ, same as ذَاكَ.

(ذَلِكَ) (mb) that, fem تِلْكَ (mb), pl\* أُولَئِكَ (mb).

ذَانِكَ, those (dual masc declined like dual), e.g., ذَانِكَ

طَالِبَانِ أَمْرِيكِيَّانِ، أُدْرَسُ ذَيْنِكَ الطَّالِبَيْنِ.

(ذَبَحَ) (a-a), to slaughter.

ii, to slaughter excessively (denoting تَكْثِير or مُبَالَغَة).

ذَرَّةٌ (ذِرْر) atom, dust speck.

أَذْرُعٌ (ذِرْع) cubit, pl أذْرُعٌ.

(ذَكَرَ) (a-u), to mention, remember.

v, to remember.

ii ① to remind. ② (gr) to treat a word as masculine.

مُذَكَّرٌ (gr), masculine (as opposed to مُؤَنَّثٌ,  
feminine).

تَذَكُّرٌ, ticket, pl تَذَاكِرٌ.

أَذْكِيَاءٌ, intelligent, sharp-witted, pl ذَكِيٌّ (ذكو).

ذَكَاءٌ, intelligence.

ذُنُوبٌ, sin, pl ذَنْبٌ (ذنب).

ذَهَبٌ (a-a), to go. ذَهَابٌ (ذهب).

تَذَكُّرَةٌ ذَهَابٌ وَإِيَابٌ, round-trip ticket.

ذَهَبٌ, gold.

ذُو (always *mudâf*), having, possessing, e.g., ذُو

مَسْجِدٌ ذُو مَنَارَتَيْنِ, a mosque with two minarets. ذُو عِلْمٍ, learned, ذُو مَالٍ, wealthy,

pl ذَوُو (declined as جَمْعٌ).

ذَوَاتٌ, fem ذَاتٌ, (المُذَكَّرِ السَّالِمِ).

ذُو الْحِجَّةِ, the twelfth month of the Arabic lunar calendar.

ذُو الْقَعْدَةِ, the eleventh month of the Arabic lunar calendar.

ذَاقَ يَذُوقُ ذَوْقًا وَمَذَاقًا (ذوق) (a-u), to taste.

أَذَاقَ يُذِيقُ إِذَاقَةً iv, to make someone taste.

مَذَاقٌ (çm), taste.

أَذَاعَ يُذِيعُ إِذَاعَةً (ذيع) to broadcast.

سَمِعْتُ هَذَا الْخَبَرَ مِنْ إِذَاعَةِ, broadcasting, radio, e.g.,

إِذَاعَةِ الرَّيَّاضِ, I heard this news from Riyadh Radio.

الإِذَاعَةُ الْمَرْئِيَّةُ, television. الإِذَاعَةُ الْمَسْمُوعَةُ, radio.

مُذِيعٌ, radio announcer, pl~.

مِذْيَاعٌ, radio set.



رُؤُوسٌ *pl*, head, رَأْسٌ (رأس)

رُؤَسَاءُ *pl*, president, رَئِيسٌ

رَأَى (a-a), to see. (رَأَيْتُ) (#) & رَاءٍ (الرَّائِي) (رأي) ① (رأي). (This is called رَأَى البَصْرِيَّةُ, the visual رأي). (مرئي)

رَأَى رَأْيًا ②, to think, consider, to be of the opinion.

(This is called رَأَى القَلْبِيَّةُ, the mental رأي, and takes two objects which are originally *mubtada'* and *khabar*, e.g., أَنْتَ مَرِيضٌ, you are sick. → أَرَأَيْتَ مَرِيضًا, I think you are sick.). The *amr* of this verb in both the senses is not used.

أَرَى يُرِي إِرَاءَةً iv, to show. (أَرَى is for أَرَأَى, and يُرِي for يُرِي).

رَأَى النَّاسَ يُرَائِي مُرَاءَةً، وَرِئَاءً iii, to do a pious act not to please God, but to please people.

مِرَايَا *pl*, mirror, مِرْآةٌ (*sl*).

رَبَطَ (a-i/u), to bind, connect, tie. (ربط)

رَابِطٌ (gr), a word linking the حَال sentence with the صَاحِبُ الْحَال. This link is either واوُ الْحَال or a pronoun, or both, e.g., دَخَلْتُ الْمَسْجِدَ وَالْإِمَامُ يَسْجُدُ (wâw al-hâl); جَلَسَ النَّاسُ يَسْمَعُونَ الْأَخْبَارَ (pronoun); خَرَجَ الطُّلَابُ وَهُمْ يَضْحَكُونَ (wâw al-hâl and pronoun).  
 أَرْبَعَةٌ أَبْنَاءٌ، وَأَرْبَعُ بَنَاتٍ، e.g., وَأَرْبَعُ four, fem أَرْبَعَةٌ (ربع)  
 أَرْبَعَةٌ عَشْرَ، e.g., وَأَرْبَعُ عَشْرَةَ fourteen, fem أَرْبَعَةٌ عَشْرَ  
 طَالِبًا، وَأَرْبَعُ عَشْرَةَ طَالِبَةً.

رُبَاعٌ (!), in fours, four at a time.

يَوْمُ الْأَرْبَعَاءِ، Wednesday.

أَرْبَعُونَ، forty, fortieth.

رُبَاعِيٌّ، consisting of four. فِعْلٌ رُبَاعِيٌّ (gr), a verb with four radicals, a quadrilateral verb like طَمَأَنَّ، تَرَجَّمَ.

رَبِيعٌ، spring (season).

رَبِيعُ الْأَوَّلِ، the third month of the Arabic lunar calendar.

رَبِيعُ الْآخِرِ، the fourth month of the Arabic lunar calendar.

(رَبَّى) ii, to educate, bring up (a child).

(الرَّبِّي) (#ii), educationist.

(رَتَّبَ) ii, to arrange.

رُتِبَتْ, grade, degree. (gr) person, i.e., each of the three persons (I, you and he) is a رُتِبَتْ.

(رَتَّلَ) ii, to recite the Qur'an slowly.

رَجَبٌ, the seventh month of the Arabic lunar calendar.

(رُجِحَ) (gr) conjecture, guess as denoted by the verb ظَنَّ.

(رَجَعَ) (a-i), to return.

رَاجَعَ مُرَاجَعَةً iii, to revise.

رَجُلٌ, man (adult male human being), pl رِجَالٌ.

أَرْجُلٌ (fem), leg, foot, pl رِجْلٌ.

(رَجِمَ) (a-u), to pelt with stone, curse.

رَجِيمٌ, cursed. الشَّيْطَانُ الرَّجِيمُ, the cursed Satan.

رَاجٍ (#) رَجَا يَرْجُو رَجَاءً (رجو) (a-u), to hope, request (الراجي), (مَرْجُوٌّ & (الراجي)).

تَرَجَّ (الترجّي) (gr) hope (one of the two meanings of لَعَلَّ).

مَرْحَبًا بِكَ, spaciousness, roominess. مَرْحَبٌ (رحب), welcome! (The idea is that my tent/house has enough room for you to come in and stay. The complete phrase of welcome is, أَهْلًا وَسَهْلًا وَمَرْحَبًا, which is for أَتَيْتَ أَهْلًا وَسَهْلًا وَمَرْحَبًا, You have come to your own kith and kin (in a tent) on a good terrain with enough room.)

مَرْحَبًا ii, to welcome (to say مَرْحَبًا تَرْحِيبًا).

مَرَا حِيضٌ, lavatory, toilet, pl (رحض).

رَحَلَ رَحِيلًا، وَتَرَحَّلًا، وَرَحْلَةً (رحل) (a-a), to set out, depart, leave.

رَحْلٌ @, travel, journey, trip, pl رَحْلَةٌ.

رَافَقَكَ اللَّهُ فِي الْحَلِّ وَالتَّرْحَالِ, journey. تَرَحَّلًا, may Allah be your companion during your stay, and during your journey.

رَحِمَ رَحْمَةً (رحم) (i-a), to have mercy.



الرَّحْمَنُ, the Most Merciful (one of the attributive names of Allah).

الرَّحِيمُ, the Compassionate (one of the attributive names of Allah).

رَحِمٌ ① womb. ② kinship, *pl*\* أَرْحَامٌ.

رَخِيصٌ (رخص), cheap.

رَدَّ عَلَى فُلَانٍ رَدًّا (ردد) (a-u), to reply, to send back.

رِدَاءٌ (ردى), sheet covering the upper part of the body

(see إِزَارٌ), *pl* أَرْدِيَةٌ.

رِزْقٌ (رزق), provision, means of living, sustenance.

الرَّزَّاقُ (ر), One who provides excessively (one of the names of Allah).

رَسَبَ رُسُوبًا (رسب) (a-u), to fail (in an examination).

أَرْسَلَ إِرْسَالًا (رسل) iv, to send.

مُرْسِلٌ (#iv), sender (of a letter).

مُرْسَلٌ إِلَيْهِ (&iv) addressee (of a letter).

رَأَسَلَ مُرَاسَلَةً iii, to correspond (# مُرَاسِلٌ, correspondent).

رِسَالَةٌ ① message, *pl*@. ② letter, *pl* رِسَائِلٌ.

رَسُولٌ, messenger, *pl* رُسُلٌ.

رَسَتِ السَّفِينَةُ رَسَوًا (رسو) to anchor.

أَرَسَى السَّفِينَةَ إِرْسَاءً iv, to place the ship at anchor.

مُرْسَى (!!) (*çm*), placing the ship at anchor. In

Q7:187, وَيَسْأَلُونَكَ عَنِ السَّاعَةِ أَيَّانَ مُرْسَاهَا, 'They ask you about the Hour, when will it come to port?' (when will it anchor, i.e., happen).

رَاشِدٌ, rightly-guided, *pl*~.

قَلَمٌ رِصَاصٌ, pencil. رِصَاصٌ, lead (metal). (رِصَصٌ)

بُنْيَانٌ مَرْصُوصٌ ❶ compact building. ❷ building built with molten lead.

رَضِيَ الشَّيْءُ، وَبِهِ يَرْضَى رِضًا، وَرِضْوَانًا، وَمَرْضَاةً (رضو) to be pleased, satisfied. (# رَاضٍ & مَرْضِيٌّ).

عَيْشَةٌ رَاضِيَةٌ, pleasing life.

أَبْتِغَاءَ مَرْضَاةِ اللَّهِ, seeking Allah's pleasure.

أَرْطَالٌ, an ancient weight, *pl* رِطَالٌ (رطل).

تَرَعْرَعٌ تَرَعْرَعًا (رعرع) (*rbii*), grow up.

(رعى) زَعَى يَرعى رِعَايَةً (a-a), to graze, tend (a flock of animals), guard, protect.

رَاعَى مُرَاعَاةً iii, to take into consideration.

رَاعٍ (الرَّاعِي) رُعَاةٌ pl, shepherd, herdsman, guardian,

(رغب) رَغِبَ فِي الشَّيْءِ رَغْبَةً (i-a), to desire, covet, crave.

رَغِبَ عَنِ الشَّيْءِ, to dislike.

رَغَّبَ فُلَانًا فِي الشَّيْءِ تَرْغِيبًا ii, to awaken a desire in someone.

رَغَّبَ فُلَانًا عَنِ الشَّيْءِ تَرْغِيبًا ii, to make someone dislike a thing.

رَفَعَ رَفْعًا (رفع) ① to raise. ② (gr) to cause a noun or a *mudâri'* verb to have the primary case-ending, *dammaḥ* (-u), or its equivalent secondary ending.

مَرَفُوعٌ, a noun or a *mudâri'* verb with the primary case-ending, *dammaḥ* (-u), or its equivalent secondary ending.

ارْتَفَعَ ارْتِفَاعًا viii ① (mt of i) to be raised, rise. ② (gr) to have the primary case-ending, *dammaḥ* (-u), or its equivalent secondary ending.

مَرَفِقٌ (رفق) مَرَافِقٌ pl, elbow,

رُفَقَاءُ, companion, *pl* رَفِيقٌ

iii, to accompany. رَافِقٌ مُرَافِقَةٌ

iii, to supervise. رَاقِبٌ مُرَاقِبَةٌ (رَقِب)

(#iii), controller of attendance in schools. مُرَاقِبٌ

number, رَقْمٌ, telephone number, *pl* رَقْمٌ الْهَاتِفِ, رَقْمٌ (رقم)  
أَرْقَامٌ.

ii, to number. عِلَامَاتُ التَّرْقِيمِ, punctuation  
marks. تَرْقِيمًا

(i-a), to ascend, رَقِيَ فِي السُّلَّمِ يَرْقِي رُقْيًا (رقي)  
mount, climb.

stair, step, rung. مِرْقَاةٌ

(i-a), to ride (an animal), board (a  
ship/train etc). رَكِبَ رُكُوبًا (ركب)

rider, passenger (in a train/bus/plane etc), *pl* رَاكِبٌ  
رُكَّابٌ.

ii, to put things together and make  
them into one, compound. (مُرَكَّبٌ, compound).

(a-a), to bow in *salâh*. رَكَعَ رُكُوعًا (ركع)

رَكْعَةٌ (çmr) bowing in salâh once. A unit of the salâh consisting of qiyâm, rukû' and sujûd, pl رَكَعَاتُ.

رُكْنٌ (رُكْنٌ) corner, pl أَرْكَانٌ. In the hadith (in Book iii, Lesson vii) it means الْحَجَرُ الْأَسْوَدُ.

رَمَضَانُ (!), the ninth month of the Arabic lunar calendar.

أَرْمَلٌ (!!), widower. أَرْمَلَةٌ, widow, pl\* أَرَامِلٌ.

رَمَى يَرْمِي رَمِيًّا (رمي) (a-i), to throw, shoot an arrow. (مَرْمِيٌّ &).

رَامٌ (الرَّامِي) archer, pl رُمَاةٌ.

يَرِنُ جَرَسٌ (a-i), to ring, e.g., رَنَّ رَنِينًا (رنن) الْهَاتِفِ, the telephone is ringing.

رَهَبَ رَهَبًا، وَرَهْبَةً (رهب) (i-a), to fear, be afraid.

رُوبِيَّةٌ (روب) rupee, pl رُوبِيَّاتٌ.

رَاحَ رَوَاحًا (روح) (a-u), to go or set out in the evening (as opposed to غَدَا).

رَوْحَةٌ (çmr), a journey in the evening (as opposed to غَدْوَةٌ)..

يَتَرَاوَحُ عَدَدُ الطُّلَّابِ بَيْنَ تَرَاوَحَ تَرَاوِحًا vi, to range, e.g., مِائَةٌ وَمِائَةٌ وَخَمْسِينَ, the number of students ranges from 100 to 150.

مَرَاوِحُ fan, pl مِرْوَحَةٌ.

اسْتَرَاحَ اسْتِرَاحَةً x, to relax, have a rest. (مُسْتَرِيحٌ #).

رَاحَةٌ ① repose, rest. ② palm of the hand, pl رَاحٌ.

أَرَادَ يُرِيدُ إِرَادَةً (رود) vi, to want, wish.

رِیَاضَةٌ (روض) sports. النَّادِي الرِّیَاضِيُّ, sports club.

الرِّیَاضُ, Riyadh (capital of Saudi Arabia).

رَوَى يَرْوِي رِوَايَةً (روي) (a-i), to report (a *hadith*).

رَاوٍ (الرَّوَاوِي) (#), reporter (of the *hadith*, etc).

رَيْبٌ (ريب) doubt.

رِيَالٌ (ريل) riyal, pl@.

## ز

(زحزح) زَحَزَحَ زَحْزَحَةً (rb), remove, keep away.

(زحل) زُحِلُّ (!), Saturn.

(زحلق) اللامُ الْمُزْحَلَقَةُ ('the displaced *lâm*') a *lâm* prefixed to the *khavar* of إِنَّ for more emphasis, e.g., وَإِنَّ إِلَهَكُمْ لَوَاحِدٌ indeed your God is one. (It is called 'the displaced *lâm*' because it should have been prefixed to the *ism* إِنَّ, but was pushed by إِنَّ to the *khavar*.)

(زحم) زِحَامٌ, crowd, crush.

ازدحامٌ ازدحَمَ ازدحاماً viii, to be crowded.

(زرر) زُرٌّ, button, pl أَزْرَارٌ.

(زرع) زَرَعُ زَرْعًا (a-a), to sow (seeds).

زُرْقٌ pl\* زُرْقَاءُ, blue, fem أَزْرَقُ (زرق).

(زفر) زُفْرٌ, an Arabic proper name.

(زكام) زُكَامٌ, common cold.

زَلَجَ زَلْجًا، وَزَلِجًا (زَلَج) (a-i), to slide.

مِزْلَاجٌ (sl), bolt (of a door), pl مِزَالِجٌ.

زَلَزَلَ زَلْزَلَةً، وَزَلَزَالًا (زَلَزَلَ), to shake violently, rock.

زُلْزَالٌ, earthquake.

زُلْزَالٌ, pleasant cold water. (also الْمَاءُ الزُّلْزَالُ).

زَمِيلٌ, colleague, classmate, pl زُمَلَاءٌ; fem زَمِيلَةٌ, pl@.

زَمَانٌ, time, a period of time, pl أَزْمَانَةٌ.

زَنَى بِهَا يَزْنِي زِنًى (a-i), to have illicit sex.

زَوَانٍ (الزَّوَانِي) pl, زَانِيَةٌ fem, زُنَاةٌ pl (#) (الزَّانِي) زَانٍ.

زَهَدًا (i-a), زَهْدًا فِي الشَّيْءِ زُهْدًا (زَهْد) ?????

زَهْرٌ (sjj) flowers, sing زَهْرَةٌ. The pl of زَهْرٌ is أَزْهَارٌ, and pl+ أَزَاهِيرٌ.

زَاهِرٌ, brilliant, bright. مُسْتَقْبَلٌ زَاهِرٌ, brilliant future.



(زَهُوٌ زَهُوٌ (زهو) unripe date when its starts turning red or yellow. Note: زَهَا النَّخْلُ (a-u), the dates on the palm tree turning red or yellow.

أَزْوَاجٌ (زوج) spouse (husband/wife), *pl*.

زَوْجَةٌ (زوجة) wife, *pl@*.

ii, زَوَّجَ فُلَانًا فُلَانَةً تَزْوِيجًا، وَزَوَّجَاً (زوج) to marry, join (man and woman) in marriage, e.g., زَوَّجَ بِلَالٌ ابْنَهُ بِنْتَ

صَدِيقِهِ, Bilal married his son to his friend's daughter.

v (mt of ii), تَزَوَّجْتُ زَمِيلَتِي (زوجت) to marry, e.g.,

I married my classmate/colleague.

مُتَزَوِّجٌ (متزوج) married.

زَارَ (زار) (a-u), to visit (# زَائِرٌ & مَزُورٌ).

زُورًا (زوار) visitor, *pl*.

زَالَ (زال) (a-u), to come to an end, to be gone.

زَائِلٌ (#) (زائل) transitory, not eternal.

iv, أَزَالَ (أزال) (زال) to bring to end, to eliminate, remove.

زَوَايَا (زوايا) (زوي) corner, angle, *pl*.

زَيْتُونَةٌ (زيتون) (sjj) olive, *singular*.

زَيْتٌ, oil, *pl* زُيُوتٌ.

زَادَ يَزِيدُ زِيَادَةً (زيد) (a-i), to grow, increase (transitive/intransitive), e.g., زَادَ رَاتِبُهُ هَذَا الْعَامَ, his pay increased this year. (intransitive).

زَادَكَ اللَّهُ عِلْمًا, may Allah increase your knowledge! (transitive).

مَزِيدٌ (&), زَائِدٌ (#).

مَزِيدٌ (*gr*), verb in which one, two or three letters have been added like اطمأنَّ استسلمَ، سالمَ، أسلمَ as opposed to سَلِمَ، طمأنَّ which has the radicals only like مَجَرَّدٌ.

مَزَادٌ, auction.

زَائِدَةٌ (*gr*), a word which does not fit in the *i'râb* pattern like the الباءُ الزَّائِدَةُ as in لَسْتُ بِمَرِيضٍ, 'I am not sick' as, according to the original *i'râb* pattern, it is لَسْتُ مَرِيضًا, and like the مِنَ الزَّائِدَةُ as in مَا رَأَيْتُ مِنْ أَحَدٍ which according to the original *i'râb* pattern is مَا رَأَيْتُ أَحَدًا.

(يَزَالُ) (i-a) (*sis/k*), to continue to, e.g.,  
مَا زَالَ بِلَالٌ مَرِيضًا, B is still sick. لَا أَزَالُ أُدْرُسُ, I am  
still studying.

(زَيْنًا) (a-i), to decorate, beautify.

ازْدَانُ يَزْدَانُ ازْدِيَانًا viii (*mt of i*), to be decorated.

## س

(س) سَـ, particle which is prefixed to the *mudâri'*, and denotes futurity, e.g., يَكْتُبُ, he writes, he is writing, he will write → سَيَكْتُبُ, he will write.

(سأل) سَأَلَ فُلَانًا عَن كَذَا سُؤَالًا (a-a), to ask, enquire.

سَأَلَ فُلَانًا شَيْئًا, to ask for something. (The *amr* is سَلْ, but after وَ and فَ: فَسَأَلَ: فَسَأَلَ).

سُؤَالٌ, question, *pl* أَسْئَلَةٌ.

سَائِلٌ, beggar; questioner.

مَسْأَلَةٌ, issue, matter, problem, *pl* مَسَائِلٌ.

تَسَاءَلُوا تَسَاءُلًا vi, to ask each other.

(سأم) سِئِمَ الشَّيْءُ، وَمِنَ الشَّيْءِ سَامَةٌ (سأم) (i-a), to be bored, fed up.

(سبأ) سَبَأٌ, the 34<sup>th</sup> *sûrah* of the Qur'an.

أَسْبَابٌ, reason, *pl* سَبَبٌ (سبب).

(a-u) سَبَّ سَبًّا, to abuse, insult, call names.

سَبَابَةٌ (سبَابَةٌ), index finger.<sup>1</sup>

سَبْتٌ (سَبْتٌ), Saturday.

سَبَحَ (a-a), to swim.

سَبَّاحٌ (سَبَّاحٌ), swimming.

سَبَّحَ (ii), to praise, glorify.

سُبْحَانَ اللَّهِ, praise Allah! (سُبْحَانَ is sç functioning here as *fi'l amr*).

سَبُّورَةٌ (سَبُّورَةٌ), writing board, *pl@*.

سَبْعَةٌ (سَبْعَةٌ), seven, *fem* سَبْعٌ, e.g., سَبْعٌ وَسَبْعٌ

بَنَاتٍ.

سَبْعَةَ عَشَرَ (سَبْعَةَ عَشَرَ), seventeen, *fem* سَبْعَ عَشْرَةَ, e.g., سَبْعَةَ عَشْرَةَ

طَالِبًا، وَسَبْعَ عَشْرَةَ طَالِبَةً.

سَابِعٌ (سَابِعٌ), seventh.

أَسَابِعٌ (أَسَابِعٌ), week, *pl* أُسْبُوعٌ.

سَبْعُونَ (سَبْعُونَ), seventy, seventieth.

---

<sup>1</sup> - *lit.* 'the excessively insulting one', as the speaker points at the addressee with this finger while abusing and insulting him.

أَسْبَعُ، سَبَعُ، سُبُعُ، one-seventh, *pl* أسْبَاعُ.

سَبَّعُ، سُبَّعُ، سُبَّاعُ، predatory animal, *pl* سِبَاعُ.

سَبَّقَ (a-i), to precede. (سبق)

سَابِقٌ، preceding, previous.

سَابَقَ مُسَابَقَةً iii, to run a race, compete.

مُسَابَقَةٌ (çiii), contest, *pl@*.

مُسَابَقَةٌ، competition, contest, *pl@*.

سَبِيلٌ (masc/fem), way, path, road, *pl* سُبُلٌ.

أَبْنُ السَّبِيلِ، wayfarer, traveller.

سَجَدَ سُجُودًا (a-u), to perform *sajdah*. (سجد)

مَسْجِدٌ، mosque, *pl* مَسَاجِدُ.

سَجَّلَ تَسْجِيلًا (سجل) ii, to register; to tape-record.

مُسَجِّلٌ، tape recorder, *pl@*.

سَحَبَ سَحْبًا (a-a) ① to drag. ② withdraw (money from a bank account).

سَحَابٌ (sjj), clouds, *sing* سَحَابَةٌ، *pl* سُحُبٌ.

سَخِرَ مِنْ فُلَانٍ سَخْرًا، وَسُخْرِيَةً (سخر) (i-a), to mock, ridicule.

(سدّد) سَدَّ سَدًّا (a-u), to block up.

يَسُدُّ مَسَدًّا الْمَفْعُولَيْنِ (gr), it fills the place of the two *maf'ûls*, it functions as the two *maf'ûls*, e.g., in أَظُنُّ أَنَّ بِلَالاً طَالِبٌ, the *çmw* طَالِبٌ functions as the two *maf'ûls* of ظَنَّ found in أَظُنُّ بِلَالاً طَالِباً.

سَدِيدٌ, correct, right.

سِتَّةٌ أَبْنَاءٌ, e.g., سِتُّ, *fem* six, (for سِدْسَةٌ) سِتَّةٌ (سدس),

وَسِتُّ بَنَاتٍ.

سِتَّةٌ عَشَرَ طَالِباً, e.g., سِتُّ عَشْرَةَ, sixteen, *fem* سِتَّةٌ عَشَرَ,

وَسِتُّ عَشْرَةَ طَالِبَةً.

سُدُسٌ, سُدُسٌ, one-sixth.

سَادِسٌ, sixth.

سِتُونٌ, sixty, sixtieth.

مُسَدَّسٌ, pistol, *pl@*.

سُرُجٌ, lamp, *pl* سُرُجٌ (سراج).

سَرَّنِي (سرر) (a-u), to please, e.g., سَرَّ فُلَانًا سُورًا (سرر) كَلَامُكَ, your words have pleased me (= I am pleased with your words. = أَنَا سُرِرْتُ بِكَلَامِكَ).

وَبِكُلِّ سُورٍ, with pleasure.

وَمَسْرُورٌ, pleased.

أَسْرَّ إِلَى فُلَانٍ حَدِيثًا إِسْرَارًا iv, to confide, to speak secretly.

سَارَّ فُلَانًا مُسَارَّةً، وَسِرَّارًا iii, to speak to someone secretly.

أَسِرَّةٌ، سُرٌّ pl سريرٌ, bed.

سَرَطَانٌ ① crab. ② cancer (med).

سَرِيعٌ (سرع), fast.

بِسُرْعَةٍ، سُرْعَةٌ, speed. quickly.

أَسْرَعَ إِسْرَاعًا iv, to hurry, speed up.

سَارَقٌ (#) (سارق) (a-i), to steal.

سَرَوِيلَاتٌ (سرَاوِيلُ) (!), trousers, pl@ (سرول).

سَرَايَا pl سريةٌ (سري), military detachment.

سُطُورٌ، أَسْطُرٌ pl سطرٌ (سطر), line (on a paper).



سَطَّرَ تَسْطِيرًا ii, to draw lines on a paper (& مُسَطَّرٌ).

مِسْطَرَةٌ, ruler (for drawing lines), pl مَسَاطِرُ.

سَاعَدَ مُسَاعِدَةً (سعد) iii, to help.

السَّعُودِيَّةُ, Saudi Arabia.

سَيَّارَةُ الإسْعَافِ (çiv), first aid. إسْعَافٌ (سعف), ambulance.

سَعَلَ سُعَالًا (سعل) (a-u), to cough.

سَعَى يَسْعَى سَعْيًا (سعي) (a-a) ① to proceed, strive. ②

سَعَى بَيْنَ الصَّفَا وَالْمَرْوَةِ (a-a), to walk between Mounts Çafâ and Marwah (in *hajj* and *'umrah*).

مَسْعَى, the space between Mounts Çafâ and Marwah where the pilgrims walk (in *hajj* and *'umrah*).

سَافَرَ مُسَافِرَةً (سفر) (# مُسَافِرٌ) iii, to travel.

أَسْفَارٌ, journey, travel, pl سَفَرٌ.

عَلَى سَفَرٍ, on a journey.

سُفْرَاءٌ, ambassador, pl سَفِيرٌ.

سُفُورٌ, being unveiled, not covering the face (woman).

سَفَارِجُ (سَفَرَجَلٌ) سفرجل، quince, *pl*

سُفَهَاءٌ (سَفِيهَةٌ) سفیه، foolish, *pl*

سَقَطَ (سُقُوطاً) سقط (a-u), to fall.

سَقَى (سَقِيَ) سَقَى يَسْقِي سَقِيًّا (a-i), to give (water) to drink.

(سَاقٍ #)

سَكَتَ (سَكُوتاً) وسَكَتَا، سکوتا، (a-u), to be silent.

سَاءَ (سَاءَتْ) see هَاءَ السَّكْتِ

سُكَّرٌ (سُكَّرٌ) سكر، sugar.

سَكِرَ (سُكْرًا) سكر (i-a), to become intoxicated.

سُكَرَانٌ (سُكَرَانٌ) سُكَرَانٌ، intoxicated, drunk, *pl*

سَكَنَ (سَكَنَ) سَكَنَ الْمَكَانَ، وَبِهِ سُكُونًا، وَسَكَنًا (سَكَنَ) سکن، to live, dwell, inhabit.

سَكْنٌ (سَكْنٌ) سَكْنٌ، dwelling, residence, hostel.

سَكِينَةٌ (سَكِينَةٌ) سَكِينَةٌ، tranquility, peace of mind.

مَسَاكِينٌ (مَسَاكِينٌ) مسکین (smk), dwelling, *pl*

حَرْفٌ سَاكِنٌ (حَرْفٌ سَاكِنٌ) حرف ساکن (gr), a vowelless consonant like the second letter in the word مِنْ.

سُكُونٌ (gr), the sign of vowellessness ( —̣ ).

سِكِّينٌ, knife, pl سَكَكِينٌ.

مَسَاكِينٌ, poor and needy, pl مَسْكِينٌ.

أَسْلِحَةٌ, weapon, pl سِلَاحٌ (سَلَح).

سَلَّحَ تَسْلِيحاً ii, to arm.

سِلْعٌ, commodity, pl سِلْعَةٌ (سَلَع).

سَلَقَ سَلْقاً (a-u), to cook in boiling water  
(without adding spices). (& مَسْلُوقٌ).

تَسَلَّقَ تَسَلُّقاً v, to climb.

سِلَالٌ, basket, pl سَلَّةٌ (سَلَل).

سَلَّةُ الْمُهْمَلَاتِ, wastepaper basket.

كُرَّةُ السَّلَّةِ, basketball.

سَلِمَ سَلَاماً، وَسَلَامَةً (سَلِمَ) (i-a), to be safe.

السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكُمْ، to greet, say سَلَّمَ عَلَى فُلَانٍ تَسْلِيماً  
say السَّلَامُ عَلَيْكُمْ at the conclusion of the *ḥalâh*.

سَلَّمَ لَهُ، وَإِلَيْهِ الشَّيْءَ تَسْلِيماً ii, to hand over.

أَسْلَمَ إِسْلَاماً iv, to become a Muslim.

اسْتَلَمَ الْحَجَرَ الْأَسْوَدَ اسْتِلاماً viii, to kiss or touch the Black Stone.

اسْتَسَلَّمَ لِفلانٍ اسْتِسلاماً x, to surrender.

سَالِمٌ (*gr*), a verb without و, ي, or أ as one of its radicals, or the same letter as the second and third radicals, e.g., شَرِبَ، دَخَلَ، كَتَبَ.

سَلَامَةٌ, safety.

جَمْعُ سَالِمٍ (*gr*), sound plural in which the original word remains in tact, and the plural signs are added at the end, e.g., مُسَلِّمٌ → مُسَلِّمُونَ / مُسَلِّمَةٌ → مُسَلِّمَاتٌ.

سَمَحَ لَهُ بِكَذَا سَمَاحاً (سمح) (a-a), to permit, allow.

سَامَحَ مُسَامِحَةً iii, to forgive.

سَمِعَ سَمْعاً (سمع) (i-a), to hear.

سَمَّاعٌ (سماع), one who hears much.

سَمِيعٌ (سميع), one who hears, one with an inherent power of hearing.

أَسْمَعَ إِسْمَاعاً iv, to make someone hear, to say, read or recite something in order that others may hear it.

اسْتَمَعَ إِلَى الشَّيْءِ اسْتِماعاً viii, to listen.

سَمِعًا وَطَاعَةً, I hear and obey (said at receiving a command from a senior).

سَمَكَةٌ (sjj), fish, *sing* (سَمَكٌ).

سَامٌ (سَمَمٌ), venomous, poisonous.

سَمٌّ, eye (of a needle).

أَسْمَاءُ\* (gr) noun. **1** اسمٌ (سمو) name. **2**

اسْمُ الْفَاعِلِ, a derived noun denoting the doer of the action, e.g., قَاتِلٌ, killer, مُدَرِّسٌ, teacher, pl أَسْمَاءُ الْفَاعِلِينَ.

اسْمُ الْمَفْعُولِ, a derived noun denoting that which has been affected by the action, e.g., مَقْتُولٌ, he who has been killed, مُلَوَّنٌ, coloured, pl أَسْمَاءُ الْمَفْعُولِينَ.

اسْمُ الْمَكَانِ, a derived noun denoting the place of the action, e.g., مَكْتَبٌ, place of writing (table, office), مَعْرَبٌ, place of setting (west).

اسْمُ الزَّمَانِ, a derived noun denoting the time of the action. It is identical with اسمُ الْمَكَانِ, e.g., مَشْرِقٌ, time of sunrise.

اسْمُ الآلَةِ, a derived noun denoting the instrument of the action, e.g., مِصْعَدٌ, lift (device for going up), مِكْنَسَةٌ, broom (device for sweeping), مِفْتَاحٌ, key (instrument of opening).

اسْمُ المَصْدَرِ, a shorter form of مَصْدَرٌ, e.g., وُضُوءٌ, ablution (تَوَضُّؤٌ), قُبْلَةٌ, kiss (تَقْبِيلٌ).

اسْمُ التَّفْضِيلِ, the comparative/superlative form of an adjective, e.g., أَكْبَرُ → كَبِيرٌ.

سَمَّيْتُ ابْنِي ii, to name, e.g.,

وَأِنِّي سَمَّيْتُهَا مَرْيَمَ, I have named my son Hamid. وَحَامِدًا, 'And I have named her Mary.' (Q3:36).

أَجَلٌ مُسَمًّى, appointed time. مُسَمًّى (&ii), named, appointed. وَإِلَى أَجَلٍ غَيْرِ مُسَمًّى, sine die.

سَمَوَاتٌ pl (mostly fem), sky, heaven, سَمَاءٌ.

أَسْنَدٌ إِسْنَادًا (سند) iv, to add pronominal endings to the

verb, e.g., شَرِبَ، شَرِبُوا، شَرِبْتَ، شَرِبْنَا، يَشْرَبُونَ،

تَشْرَبِينَ، etc.

[سِنغَافُورَةُ], Singapur.

أَسْنَانٌ <sup>١</sup> tooth. <sup>٢</sup> age. *pl\** سِنٌ (سِنَن)

سُنَّةٌ, the sayings and doings of the Prophet صَلَّى اللهُ عَلَيْهِ

سُنَنٌ *pl*, وَسَلَّمَ

(سَنَوَاتٌ) *pl@*, year, سَنَةٌ (سَنَهُ)

سَاعَةٌ (سَوَعٌ), an hour; a (wrist) watch, clock, *pl*

سَاعَاتٌ

السَّاعَةُ, the Day of Resurrection.

سَهْلٌ سُهُولَةً (سَهْلٌ) (u-u), to be easy.

سَهْلٌ <sup>١</sup> easy. <sup>٢</sup> smooth and soft ground.

أَهْلًا وَسَهْلًا, welcome (*literally*, you are with your kith and kin, and on good terrain). See مَرْحَبًا under رَحِبَ.

إِسْهَالٌ (çiv), diarrhea.

سُوءٌ (سَوَاءٌ), evil.

سَيِّئَةٌ, sin, evil deed, *pl@*. سَيِّئٌ, evil, bad.

سُودٌ *pl\** سَوْدَاءٌ, fem, black, أَسْوَدٌ (سَوْدٌ)

سُوْدٌ (#) (مُسُوْدٌ), ix, to become black. اسْوَدَّ اسْوَدَادًا

سُورَةٌ (سُورٌ), chapter of the Qur'an, *pl*

أَسَاوِرٌ *pl+*, وأسُورَةٌ *pl*, bracelet, سِوَارٌ

سُورِيَا, Syria. سُورِيٌّ, Syrian.

نَكِيرَةٌ (سوغ) مُسَوِّغٌ (*gr*), a justifying factor, e.g., a نَكِيرَةٌ cannot be a مُبْتَدَأٌ as a rule, but it can be if it is

preceded by an interrogative particle as in <sup>ج</sup> <sup>ق</sup> أَيْلَهُ مَعَ اللَّهِ 'Is there any god with Allah?'(Q27:60). This is a مُسَوِّغٌ, *pl@*.

وَأَكْتُبُ, particle denoting futurity, سَوْفَ (سوف) I write → سَوْفَ أَكْتُبُ, I shall write.

سَاقٌ يَسُوقُ سَوْقًا، وَسِيَاقَةٌ (سوق) (مَسُوقٌ & سَائِقٌ #).

سِيَاقٌ, context.

أَسْوَاقٌ *pl* (masc/fem), سوقٌ, market.

سُوكٌ *pl*, سِوَاكٌ, stick used to clean the teeth, (سوك).

مَسَاوِيكٌ *pl*, سِوَاكٌ, same as مِسْوَكٌ.

أَسْتَاكُ يَسْتَاكُ اسْتِيَاكًا viii, to clean the teeth.

سَامٌ سَوْمًا (سوم) (a-u), to inflict (a punishment).



(سوي) سَوَى (followed by *mudâf ilaihi*), except,  
e.g., نَجَحَ الطُّلَّابُ كُلُّهُمْ سِوَى حَامِدٍ, all the students  
except Hamid have passed.

[سُويسِرَا], Switzerland. سُويِسِرِيُّ, Swiss.

(سير) سَارَ يَسِيرُ سَيْرًا (a-i), to go, to move, travel.

سَيَّارَةٌ, car, *pl* سَيَّارَاتٌ.

سَيْرَةٌ, biography of the Prophet ﷺ.

(سائل) سَالَ يَسِيلُ سَيْلًا (a-i), to flow. (# سَائِلٌ).

## ش

[شاشة<sup>ء</sup>], (T.V.) screen, *pl@*.

[شاي<sup>ء</sup>], tea.

(شأم<sup>ء</sup>) *متشائم* (#) *vi*, to be pessimistic.

(شأن<sup>ء</sup>) *شؤون* *pl*, matter, affair.

(شباب<sup>ء</sup>) *شباب* *pl*, young man, youth.

(شباب<sup>ء</sup>) *كنت في شبابي*, youth, youthfulness, e.g., *كنت في شبابي*  
*والعب كرة القدم*, in my youth I used to play football.

(شبع<sup>ء</sup>) *شبع شبعاً* (i-a), to eat one's fill, be satiated. (#)  
*شبعي fem* *شبعان*.

(شبه<sup>ء</sup>) *شبه الشيء بالشيء تشبيهاً* ii, to liken.

(شبيه<sup>ء</sup>) *تشبيه* (çii), likening, simile.

الأحرف المشبهة بالفعل *particles* which  
 'resemble' verbs. These are *إن، أن، كأن، لكن، لیت،*  
*إن، أن، كأن، لكن، لیت،* These resemble verbs for, like verbs, they render  
 the following nouns *منصوب*, and have the meanings

of verbs, e.g., لَيْتَ means 'I wish', لَعَلَّ means 'I hope' or 'I fear', etc.

أَشْبَاهُ, شَبَّهَ, شَبَّهَ, similar, like, *pl*

جَمَلَ, شَبَّهَ جُمْلَةً, *see under*

شَتَّى, شَتَّيْتُ, شَتَّيْتُ (شَتَّتْ), separated, dispersed, *pl*

أَشْجَارٌ, شَجَرَةٌ, شَجَرٌ (sjj), trees, *sing*

تَشَاجَرُوا, تَشَاجَرٌ, vi, to quarrel.

شَاحِنَةٌ, شَاحِنَةٌ (شَحْن), truck, lorry, *pl@*.

شَخَرَ, شَخِرًا (a-i), to snore.

شِدَادٌ, شَدِيدٌ (شَدَد), strong, powerful, hard, severe, *pl*

شَدَّدَ الْحَرْفَ تَشْدِيدًا ii (*gr*), to pronounce the letter twice as the ن in إِنَّ. (Such a letter is مُشَدَّدٌ. The sign of تَشْدِيدٌ is شَدَّةٌ -).

اشْتَدَّ, اشْتَدَّ (a-i), to intensify, become severe.

شَرِبَ, شَرِبًا (i-a), to drink.

شَرَحَ, شَرَحًا (a-a), to explain.

① شَرَطٌ (شرط) condition. ② (gr) conditional sentence, e.g., **وَإِنْ تَجْتَهِدْ تَنْجَحْ**, 'if you work hard, you will pass.' In this sentence, **إِنْ** is **أَدَاةُ الشَّرْطِ** (conditional instrument), **تَجْتَهِدْ** is **فِعْلُ الشَّرْطِ** (conditional verb), and **تَنْجَحْ** is **جَوَابُ الشَّرْطِ**.

**اشْتَرَطَ** viii, to stipulate, to make conditional.

**أَشْرَطَةٌ**, tape, magnetic tape, *pl* **شَرِيْطٌ**.

**شُرْطِيٌّ**, policeman. **شُرْطَةٌ**, police.

**شَرِيْعَةٌ** (شرع) Islamic law.

**شَرْعِيٌّ**, pertaining to Islamic law.

**شَوَارِعٌ**, street, *pl* **شَارِعٌ**.

**شَرَعَ** (a-a), to start, commence.

**أَفْعَالُ الشُّرُوعِ** (gr), verbs denoting commencement of an action like **جَعَلَ**, **طَفِقَ**, **أَخَذَ**.

**شَرُفَ** (u-u), to be noble. **شَرَفًا** (شرف).

**شَرَّفَ** ii, to honour, exalt, ennoble. (**مُشَرَّفٌ** & **مُشَرَّفَةٌ**).

Note **الْكَعْبَةُ الْمُشَرَّفَةُ**, the exalted Ka'bah).

وَمُشْرِفٌ (#) iv, to supervise. (مُشْرِفٌ, supervisor, pl~).

(شُرُفَاتٌ) balcony, pl@, شُرُفَةٌ.

شَرَقَ شُرُوقًا (شرق) (a-u), to rise (of the sun).

مِنْ مَشَارِقِ الْأَرْضِ: مَشَارِقٌ (smk), east, pl مَشْرِقٌ. Note: وَمَعَارِبِهَا, from the four corners of the earth.

iv, to associate someone with Allah. (مُشْرِكٌ) (#). (شُرِكَاَ بِاللّٰهِ إِشْرَاكًا) (شرك)

شِرْكٌ, associating someone with Allah.

مَشَارَكَةٌ (çiii) (gr) participation of more than one in an action as in تَعَاوَنَ النَّاسُ 'the people cooperated.' Actions of this kind cannot have a single فَاعِلٌ. A sentence like تَعَاوَنَ بِلَالٌ has no meaning.

viii, to participate, take part. اشْتَرَاكَ اشْتِرَاكًا

شِرْكَةٌ, firm, company, pl@.

شَرَى شِرْيًا، وَشَرَاءٌ (شري) (a-i) ❶ to buy. ❷ to sell.

viii, to buy. اشْتَرَى اشْتِرَاءً

- شِرَاءٌ (شَرَى يَشْرِي) (ci), purchase.
- شَيْطَانٌ (شَطَنَ), Satan, devil, *pl* شَيْطَانِينَ.
- شَطَائِيَا (شَطِيءٌ), splinter, *pl* شَطَائِيَا.
- شُعُوبٌ (شَعَبٌ), people, nation, *pl* شُعُوبٌ.
- شَعْبَانٌ (!), the eighth month of the Arabic lunar calendar.
- شَعَرَ شُعُورًا (شَعَرَ) (a-u), to perceive, feel, realize.
- شِعْرٌ, poetry.
- شَعِيرٌ, barley.
- شَغَلَ فُلَانًا شَغْلًا (شَغَلَ) (a-a), to preoccupy, keep busy, e.g., شَغَلَنِي مَرَضُ أَخِي, my brother's sickness has preoccupied me. (& مَشْغُولٌ).
- شَعَّلَ تَشْغِيلًا ii, to start (a machine).
- شَفَقَةٌ (شَفَقَ), compassion, pity.
- شِفَاهٌ (شَفَاهَ), lip, *pl* شِفَاهٌ.
- شَفَوِيٌّ (شَفَاهَ), oral.

شَفَى يَشْفِي شِفَاءً (شَفِي) (a-i), to heal, restore to health

(مَشْفِيٌّ & شَافٍ (الشَّافِي) (#).

(مُسْتَشْفِيَاتٌ) (pl@ hospital, (!!)

شَقَّ شَقًّا (شَقَق) (a-u), to split.

اشْتَقَّ اشْتِقَاقًا viii (gr), to derive a word from another.

اسْمٌ (gr) a derived form, pl@ like: (مُشْتَقٌّ) (&

الْفَاعِلِ، اسْمُ الْمَفْعُولِ، اسْمُ الْمَكَانِ، اسْمُ الْمَكَانِ، اسْمُ الْأَلَةِ

أَنْشَقَّ أَنْشِقَاقًا vii (mt of i), to split.

شَقَائِقُ pl شَقِيْقَةٌ fem، وَأَشِقَاءُ pl، شَقِيْقٌ full brother،

شِقَقٌ pl، شِقَقَةٌ flat, apartment،

شَكَرَ شُكْرًا (شَكَر) (a-u), to thank. (# شَاكِرٌ).

شُكْرًا جَزِيْلًا، thanks a lot.

شَكُوْرٌ (شَكُوْرٌ), one who thanks excessively, one who appreciates much.

شَكََّ فِي الْأَمْرِ شَكًّا (شَكَكَ) (a-u), to doubt.

أَشْكَالٌ pl، شَكْلٌ (شَكَلَ) (شكل).

شَكَاهُ إِلَى فُلَانٍ يَشْكُو شِكَايَةً (شكو) (a-u), to complain (#  
(مَشْكُوٌّ & شَاكٍ (الشَّاكِي).

اشْمَأَزَّ اشْمِئْزَازًا (شماز) (rbiii), to detest, feel  
disgust.

الشَّمْسُ (شمس) the sun.

أَلْحُرُوفُ الشَّمْسِيَّةُ, the solar letters (which assimilate  
the *lâm* of the article *al-*).

شَمَائِلٌ (شمائل) *pl*, left (hand) (*fem*), *pl* شِمَالٌ (شمل).

اشْتَمَلَ اشْتِمَالًا viii, to contain, include.

بَدَلُ اشْتِمَالٍ, a type of *بَدَلٌ* where the second  
word is not part of the first, but something contained  
in it, e.g., أَعْجَبَنِي هَذَا الْكِتَابُ أُسْلُوبُهُ, I like this  
book, its style.

شَمِمْتُ (شممت) i-a شَمَّ شَمًّا (شمم) to smell.

شَانَيْتُ (# شَانَيْتُ) (i-a) شَنِئْتُ شِنَانًا (شنا) to hate.

شَهِدْتُ (شهدت) i-a شَهِدَ بِكَذَا شَهَادَةً (شهد) to bear witness, testify, be  
present.

شَهِدٌ (شهد) witness, *pl* شُهَدَاءُ.

شَهِيدٌ (شهيد) witness to an event, martyr, *pl* شُهَدَاءُ.



شَاهَدَ مُشَاهَدَةً iii, to watch (T.V., etc).

شَهْرٌ، أَشْهُرٌ pl أَشْهُرٌ، شَهْرٌ (شهر)

شَهْرِيّ، monthly.

شَهِيرٌ، famous.

أَشَارَ إِلَى كَذَا يُشِيرُ إِشَارَةً (شور) iv, to point at.

هَذَا، هَذِهِ، demonstrative pronoun such as اسمُ إِشَارَةٍ هَؤُلَاءِ.

مَشُورَةٌ، مَشُورَةٌ، consultation.

شَوَّالٌ (شول) the tenth month of the Arabic lunar calendar.

شَاوٍ (#) شَوَى يَشْوِي شَيْئاً (شوي) (a-i), to roast, grill.

(مَشْوِيٌّ & (الشَّوِي))

شَاءَ يَشَاءُ شَيْئاً، وَمَشِيئَةً (شيء) (i-a), to want, wish.

إِنْ شَاءَ اللَّهُ، if Allah wills.

مَا شَاءَ اللَّهُ (literally, what Allah wills) an expression of appreciation.

أَشْيَاءٌ (!) شَيْءٌ، thing, pl

مَا رَأَيْتُ شَيْئاً، I did not see anything.

هَلْ لَدَيْكَ شَيْءٌ؟, Do you have anything?

شَيْخٌ (شَيْخ) , old man, elder, religious scholar, *pl*

شُيُوخٌ.

الشَّيْخَانِ, the two great *hadith* authorities, Bukhari and Muslim.

## ص

(صَبَّ صَبًّا) (a-u), to pour.

(صَبَّاحٌ) (صبح), morning.

أَصْبَحَ iv ① (sis/k) to become in the morning, e.g.,  
 أَصْبَحَ الْجَوُّ لَطِيفًا , the weather became pleasant in the  
 morning. ② (ftm) to spend the morning, enter in the  
 morning e.g., لَمَّا أَصْبَحْتُ خَرَجْتُ لِلنَّزْهَةِ , when it was  
 morning, I went for a walk.

(صَبْرٌ) (صَابِرٌ) (a-i), to be patient. (صَابِرٌ).

اصْطَبَرَ اصْطِبَارًا viii, same as صَبْرٌ.

أَصَابِعُ (صَبَعٌ) (fem/masc), finger, pl

صَابُونَةٌ, soap. صَابُونٌ (صَبِنٌ)

صَحِبَ صُحْبَةً (صَحَبٌ) (i-a), to accompany.

صَاحِبٌ, companion, friend, (as *mudâf*) owner,  
 holder, e.g., صَاحِبُ الْبَيْتِ, owner of the house, صَاحِبٌ  
 أَسْحَابٌ, holder of the seat, pl

صَحَابِيُّ, companion of the Prophet صَلَّى اللهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ, *pl*  
صَحَابَةٌ.

(صح) صَحَّ صِحَّةً (a-i), to be correct.

صَحِيحٌ ① correct, authentic *pl* صحاحٌ. ② healthy, *pl*  
أَصْحَاءٌ. ③ (*gr*), verb which does not have ا، ي as  
one of the radicals (مُعْتَلٌّ).

الصَّحِيحَانِ, the two most authentic collections of  
*hadith* of Imam al-Bukhari and Imam Muslim.

صَحَّحَ تَصْحِيحًا ii, to correct.

(!) صَحَارِيُّ *pl*, صحراءٌ, desert, (صح).

صُحُفٌ *pl*, صحيفَةٌ, newspaper, (صحف).

مُصْحَفٌ (&iv), copy of the Glorious Qur'an, *pl*  
مَصَاحِفٌ.

صَدْرٌ ① breast, chest. ② (*gr*) the main  
element in a sentence (the مُبْتَدَأٌ in the nominal  
sentence, and the فِعْلٌ in the verbal sentence). *pl*\*

صُدُورٌ.

تَصَدَّرَ تَصَدُّرًا v (gr), to be the first word in the sentence. (# مُتَّصِدَّرٌ).

مَصْدَرٌ (gr), the basic form of the verb from which all other forms are derived, e.g., كِتَابَةٌ (writing) from which are derived كَتَبَ، يَكْتُبُ، اِكْتُبُ، كَاتِبٌ، مَكْتُوبٌ، مَصَادِرُ pl مَصَادِرُ، etc., مَكْتُبٌ.

المَصْدَرُ المَوْوَلُ، a phrase which functions as a *maçdar*, e.g., أُرِيدُ الخُرُوجَ = أُرِيدُ أَنْ أَخْرُجَ.

المَصْدَرُ المِيميُّ، a form of *maçdar* which commences with a م like مَغْفِرَةٌ meaning غُفْرَانٌ.

مَصْدَرُ المَرَّةِ، a form of *maçdar* denoting the number of times the action took place, e.g., طَبْعَةٌ، one edition, جَلْسَةٌ، one session, تَكْبِيرَةٌ، saying *Allahu Akbar* once.

مَصْدَرُ الهَيْئَةِ، a form of *maçdar* denoting the manner of the action, e.g., جَلْسَةٌ، manner of sitting, مَشْيَةٌ، manner of walking, gait.

(صدع) صداعٌ, headache.

(صدق) صدقٌ صدقاً (a-u), to speak the truth.

صدقٌ تصديقاً ii, to believe, trust, deem someone credible.

أصدقاءٌ صديقٌ, friend, pl

صادقٌ فلاناً مصادقةً iii, to befriend.

صدقٌ تصدقاً v, to give alms. صدقةٌ, charity, alms, pl@.

(صرح) صريحٌ, pure, unadulterated.

مصدرٌ مؤولٌ, e.g., اسمٌ صريحٌ, a noun as opposed to اسمٌ صريحٌ and الجلوسُ and الذهابُ each of these is a اسمٌ صريحٌ as opposed to أن تجلسَ, أن تذهبَ, each of which is a مصدرٌ مؤولٌ as in the following sentences:

الذهابُ إلى المكتبةِ خيرٌ لكَ من الجلوسِ في البيتِ.

أن تذهبَ إلى المكتبةِ خيرٌ لكَ من أن تجلسَ في البيتِ.

(صرع) صرعاً (a-a), to knock someone down, to throw someone to the ground.

صرعىٌ, one knocked down, pl

(a-i) (gr) to pronounce the noun with the *tanwîn* (as opposed to مَنَّعَ, to pronounce it without the *tanwîn*).

انْصَرَفَ انْصِرَافًا vii ① to go away, to depart (from school). ② (gr) to take the *tanwîn*, behave like a مُنْصَرَفٌ noun.

مُنْصَرَفٌ (gr) a noun which takes *tanwîn*, and has *kasrah* as the *jarr*-ending, e.g., كِتَابٌ.

غَيْرٌ مُنْصَرَفٌ, a noun which does not take *tanwîn*, and has *fathah* as the *jarr*-ending, e.g., مَرِيْمٌ، مِنْ مَرِيْمٍ, (مَمْنُوعٌ مِنَ الصَّرْفِ).

تَصَرَّفُ كَافِ الْخِطَابِ (gr), تَصَرَّفَ تَصَرُّفًا v, to change. to change the ك of ذَلِكْ and أَوْلَيْكَ in consideration of the person spoken to, e.g.,

ذَلِكَ الْبَيْتُ جَمِيلٌ يَا بِلَالُ.      ذَلِكَ الْبَيْتُ جَمِيلٌ يَا إِخْوَانَ.  
ذَلِكَ الْبَيْتُ جَمِيلٌ يَا أَمِنَةَ.      ذَلِكَ الْبَيْتُ جَمِيلٌ يَا أَخَوَاتُ.

① morphology (science dealing with the forms of words, and how a form is derived from another). ② *tanwîn*.

مَصْرَفٌ, bank (for money), *pl* مَصَارِفُ.  
 (صرم) انصَرَمَ انصِرَامًا (vii), to elapse (time).  
 العامُّ المنصرمُ, last year. المنصرمُ (#vii), past.  
 صعوبَةٌ, difficulty. صعِبَ, difficult. (صعب)  
 (i-a), صَعِدَ صُعُودًا (صعد), to climb, ascend.  
 مَصَاعِدٌ, lift (in multi-storey buildings), *pl* مَصَاعِدُ.  
 صَوَاعِقُ, thunderbolt, *pl* صَوَاعِقُ (صعق).  
 (u-u), صَغُرَ صِغْرًا (صغر), to be small; to be young.  
 صَغِيرَةٌ, small; young, *fem* صَغِيرَةٌ, *pl*\* صَغَارٌ.  
 ii (gr), صَغَّرَ تَصْغِيرًا, to change a noun into its  
 diminutive form like جَبَلٌ → جَبِيلٌ / فُنْدُقٌ → فُنَيْدِقٌ.  
 (gr), تَصْغِيرٌ, forming the diminutive of a noun; the  
 diminutive form of a noun.  
 صَفْحَةٌ, page, *pl* صَفْحَاتٌ (صفح).  
 iii, صَافَحَ مَصَافِحَةً, to shake hands, e.g., صَافِحَ بِلَالٌ  
 حامداً.



تَصَافَحَ النَّاسُ, e.g., تَصَافَحُوا تَصَافِحًا  
vi, to shake hands, تَصَافَحَ بِلَالٌ وَحَامِدٌ.

صَفْرٌ (صَفْرٌ), the second month of the Arabic lunar  
calendar.

صُفْرٌ\*, صَفْرَاءُ fem, yellow, أَصْفَرُ.

ix, to turn yellow. (مُصْفَرٌ #).

ix, to turn yellow gradually. اصْفَارُ يَصْفَرُ اصْفَارًا

صَفِيرًا (a-i), to whistle.

صُفُوفٌ pl, row, rank, file, صَفٌّ (صَفٌّ).

(a-u), to be or become clear,  
unpolluted. مِصْفَاةٌ (sl) strainer, filter, (oil) refinery, pl

مَصَافٍ (المَصَافِي).

viii, to choose, select. (!!), مُصْطَفًى (& chosen).

(a-i), to crucify. صَلَبَ صَلْبًا (صَلَبَ).

صَلِيبٌ, cross, pl صُلْبَانٌ.

(a-u), to be good, proper, in  
order, pious. (صَالِحٌ #).

أَصْلَحَ إِصْلَاحًا iv, improve, ameliorate, reform.

صَلَّى ii, to pray (# مُصَلٍّ). (Its *maçdar* تَصَلَّى is not used in this sense).

صَلَّى بِالنَّاسِ, to lead the people in prayer as imam.

صَلَّى عَلَى الْمَيِّتِ, to say the funeral prayer.

صَلَّى عَلَى النَّبِيِّ ❶ to send blessings on the prophet (if the فَاعِلٌ is Allah). ❷ to invoke Allah's blessings on the Prophet (if the فَاعِلٌ is man or angel).

صَلَاةٌ, prayer, *çalâh*, pl صَلَوَاتٌ.

الصَّلَاةُ الْمَكْتُوبَةُ, the five prescribed prayers.

مُصَلَّى (!!), prayer-room.

صَمَتَ صَمْتًا (a-u), to keep quiet.

صَمٌّ\* pl, صَمَاءٌ fem, أَصَمُّ (صمم).

صَنَادِيقٌ\* pl, ❶ صندوقٌ box, trunk. ❷ fund, صندوقٌ البرِّ.

صَنَادِيقٌ البرِّ, charity fund.

صَنَّ صُنْعًا (a-a), to make, manufacture.

مَصْنَعٌ (smk), factory, pl مَصَانِعٌ.

أَصْنَامٌ *pl*, idol, *صَنِمٌ* (صنم)

صَهْلٌ صَهِيلاً (a-i), to neigh. (سهل)

أَصَابَ إِصَابَةً (صوب) iv, to hit (the target); to be right; to afflict, e.g., أَصَابَهُ إِسْهَالٌ, *literally*, diarrhea afflicted him, i.e., he is suffering from diarrhea. (& مُصَابٌ, e.g., هُوَ مُصَابٌ بِإِسْهَالٍ, he is suffering from diarrhea.)

صَوَابٌ, right, correct (as opposed to خَطَأٌ).

أَصْوَاتٌ *pl*, voice, sound, *صَوْتٌ* (صوت)

صُورَةٌ شَمْسِيَّةٌ, photo, *pl* صُورٌ. *صُورَةٌ*, picture, (صور)

صَوَّرَ تَصْوِيرًا ii, to shape; to photograph.

أَصْوُعٌ *pl*, a cubic measure, *صَاعٌ* (*masc/fem*) (صوع)

صَاغَ صَوَّغًا، وَصَيَّغَةً (صوغ) (a-u) (*gr*), to form a word, e.g., صُنِعَ اسْمُ الْمَكَانِ مِنْ جَلَسَ, form *smk* from the verb

جَلَسَ.

صَوَّغَ (*gr*), word formation.

صَيَّغٌ *pl*, form of the word, *صَيَّغَةٌ* (*gr*).

أَصْوَافٌ *pl*, wool, *صُوفٌ* (صوف)

صَامَ يَصُومُ صَوْمًا، وَصِيَامًا (صوم) (a-u), to fast.

صَانَ يَصُونُ صَوْنًا، وَصِيَانَةً (صون) (a-u), to preserve, to safeguard, protect. (& مَصُونٌ).

صَادَ يَصِيدُ صَيْدًا (صيد) (a-i), to hunt.

صَيْدَلِيَّةٌ (صيدل) pharmacy.

صَيْدَلِيٌّ (صيدلي) pharmacist.

صَارَ صَيْرُورَةً (صير) (a-i) (sis/k), to become, e.g., صَارَ الْمَاءُ ثَلْجًا, water became ice.

صَيْفٌ (صيف) summer.

الصِّينُ (صين) China, صِينِيٌّ (صيني) Chinese.

## ض

(ضَبَطَ) ضَبَطَ ضَبْطًا (ضبط) (a-i), to check, control, (gr) to vocalize (a word).

بِالضَّبْطِ, exactly.

(ضَجِرَ) تَضَجَّرَ تَضَجُّرًا (ضجر) v, to be annoyed, be vexed.

(ضَجَعَ) ضَجَعَ ضُجُوعًا (ضجع) (a-a), to lie on one's side.

مَضَاجِعُ, bed, pl مَضَجَعٌ.

(ضَحِكَ) ضَحِكَ ضَحِكًا (ضحك) (i-a), to laugh.

أَضْحَكَ فُلَانًا إِضْحَاكًا iv, to make someone laugh.

(ضَحِيَ) عِيدُ الْأَضْحَى (ضحى) the Festival of Sacrifice on the 10<sup>th</sup> day of Dhu l-Hijjah.

(ضَخِمَ) ضَخِمَ ضَخَامَةً (ضخم) (u-u), to be large, bulky, voluminous. (# ضَخْمٌ pl ضَخَامٌ).

أَضْدَادٌ, opposite, pl ضِدٌّ (ضدد).

(ضَرَبَ) ضَرَبَ ضَرْبًا (ضرب) (a-i), to beat, hit.

إِضْرَابٌ (çiv) (gr), *literally* 'abandoning'. The particle  
 بَلْ signifies abandoning the subject preceding it and  
 proceeding to a different subject. The إِضْرَابٌ is:

a) either اِبْطَالِيٌّ, i.e., totally abandoning the previous

subject as in Q3:169, وَلَا تَحْسَبَنَّ الَّذِينَ قُتِلُوا فِي سَبِيلِ اللَّهِ  
 وَأَمْوَاتًا بَلْ أَحْيَاءُ  
 Allah to be dead, nay they are alive',

b) or اِنْتِقَالِيٌّ, i.e., passing on to another subject  
 without abandoning the previous one as in Q87:14-

16, قَدْ أَفْلَحَ مَنْ تَزَكَّى ﴿١٤﴾ وَذَكَرَ اسْمَ رَبِّهِ فَصَلَّى ﴿١٥﴾ بَلْ تُؤْثِرُونَ الْحَيَاةَ  
 الدُّنْيَا, 'Successful is he who purifies himself, and  
 remembers his Lord, and prays. Yet you prefer the  
 life of this world.'

تَضَارَبُوا تَضَارِبًا vi, to hit one another, come to blows.

اضْطَرَبَ اضْطِرَابًا viii, to be disturbed, to shake.

ضَرَّ ضَرًّا (a-u), to harm, hurt. (# ضَارٌّ).

ضَرَّرَ, harm.

اضْطَرَّ يَضْطَرُّ اضْطِرَارًا viii, to compel. (# & مُضْطَرٌّ).

(ضرع) مُضَارِعٌ (gr), verb denoting present or future tense, e.g., يَكْتُبُ, he writes/he will write.

أَحْرَفُ الْمُضَارِعَةِ, the letters ن، ي، ت، أ combined in the mnemonic أَتَيْنَ (they came) which are prefixed to the *mudâri'* (يَكْتُبُ، تَكْتُبُ، أَكْتُبُ، نَكْتُبُ).

ضِعَافٌ pl\* ضَعِيفَةٌ fem, weak, ضَعِيفٌ (ضعف).

ii ① ضَعَّفَ تَضْعِيفًا to redouble. ② (gr) to change a verb into form ii, e.g., دَرَسَ, to study, دَرَّسَ, to teach.

مُضَعَّفٌ (gr), verb with the same letter as the second and the third radicals such as رَدَّ، حَجَّ، شَكَّ. Also called مُضَاعَفٌ.

ضَلَّ الطَّرِيقَ ضَلَالًا، وَضَلَالَةً (ضلل) (a-i), to go stray, lose one's way, err. (# ضالٌّ).

iv أضلَّ فلاناً إضلالاً, mislead, lead astray.

ضَمَائِرٌ pl (gr), pronoun, ضَمِيرٌ (ضمير).

ضَمِيرٌ مَسْتَتِرٌ, hidden pronoun as in كَتَبَ, he wrote, كَتَبَتْ, she wrote, أَكْتُبُ, I write.

وَكَتَبْتَ، visible pronoun as the *tā* in كَتَبْتَ،  
كَتَبْتِ، and the *wāw* in كَتَبُوا.

هُوَ، أَنْتَ، independent pronoun such as ضَمِيرٌ مُنْفَصِلٌ،  
(ضَمَائِرُ نَصْبٍ) أَيَّاهَا، أَيَّاكُمْ، أَيَّايَ، (ضَمَائِرُ رَفْعٍ) نَحْنُ.

كَ and تُو attached pronoun such as ضَمِيرٌ مُتَّصِلٌ،  
in مِنْهُ and رَأَيْتُكَ.

ضَمِيرٌ شَأْنٍ، a pronoun which refers to a following  
sentence, e.g., لَمْ أُسَافِرْ فِي الْعُطْلَةِ لِأَنَّهُ لَمْ يَكُنْ لِي جَوَازٌ فِي  
ذَلِكَ الْوَقْتِ، I did not travel during the holidays as I  
had no passport at that time.<sup>1</sup>

ضَمِيرٌ مَرْفُوعٌ، an independent مَرْفُوعٌ pronoun added to  
indicate the noun following it a *khabar*, and not a  
نَعْتٌ or a بَدَلٌ، e.g., in ذَلِكَ هُوَ الْبَيْتُ، 'that is the house'  
الْبَيْتُ is the *khabar*. If هُوَ is omitted, الْبَيْتُ might be  
mistaken for بَدَلٌ. In إِبْرَاهِيمُ هُوَ النَّاجِحُ، 'Ibrahim is the  
successful one' النَّاجِحُ is the *khabar*. If هُوَ is  
omitted, it might be mistaken for a نَعْتٌ.

---

<sup>1</sup> It is like *it* in 'It is wrong to say so' (= To say so is wrong.)



ضَمَّ ضَمًّا (a-u) (gr), to pronounce a letter with a ضَمَّةٌ.

ضُمَّةٌ, the vowel *u* as in *put*, and its sign (ـُـ), *pl@*.

مَضْمُونٌ (ضمن), purport, meaning, contents.

تَضَمَّنَ تَضَمُّنًا v, to contain, comprise.

ضَاعَ يَضِيعُ ضَيَاعًا (ضيع) (# ضَائِعٌ), to be lost. (a-i).

ضَيَّعَ يَضِيعُ ضَيِّعًا ii, to waste, lose, let something get lost.

ضَيْفٌ، أَضْيَافٌ *pl* ضَيْفٌ, guest, *pl*.

أَضَافَ اسْمًا إِلَى آخَرَ ② to add. ① أَضَافَ يُضِيفُ إِضَافَةً

(gr), to add a noun to another to signify the meaning of possession, e.g., كِتَابٌ بِلَالٍ, 'Bilal's book'. The first

word is the مُضَافٌ, and the second is the مُضَافٌ إِلَيْهِ,

and the construction is إِضَافَةٌ.

إِضَافِيٌّ, additional, دَرَسْتُ إِضَافِيًّا, additional lecture.

## ط

أَطِبَّاءُ, doctor, *pl fem*, طَبِيبٌ (طبيب)  
 طَبِيبَاتٌ, lady doctor, *pl*, طَبِيبَةٌ.

طَبَخَ (a-u), to cook. (طبخ)

مَطْبَخٌ (*smk*), kitchen.

طَبَاشِيرٌ (!), chalk (for writing). (طبشور)

طَبَعَ (a-a), to print. وَطَبَاعَةٌ (طبع)

طَبَعَةٌ (*çmr*) edition.

طَبَعًا, of course.

أَطْبَاقٌ, plate, dish, layer, *pl* طَبَاقٌ (طبق)

طَوَاقٌ, storey (of a building), floor, *pl* طَوَاقٌ (طابق)

النَّعْتُ يُطَابِقُ, agree, e.g., طَابَقَ مُطَابَقَةً, وَطَبَاقًا

الْمَنْعُوتَ فِي التَّذْكِيرِ وَالتَّأْنِيثِ, the adjective agrees with the noun it qualifies in being masculine or feminine.

طُرُزٌ, أَطْرِزَةٌ, model, *pl* طِرَازٌ (طرز)

طَرَقَ (a-u), to knock, to hammer. (طرق)

مِطْرَقَةٌ (sl), hammer, pl مَطَارِقُ.

طَرِيقٌ, way, road, pl طُرُقٌ, pl+ طُرُقَاتٌ.

طَرِيقَةٌ, manner, method, procedure, way, pl طَرَائِقُ.

طَعِمَ طَعْمًا (i-a), to taste, eat. (طعم)

أَطْعَمَ, food, pl طَعَامٌ.

مَطْعَمٌ, restaurant, dining room, pl مَطَاعِمٌ.

طَعَّمَ تَطْعِيمًا ii, to inoculate, vaccinate.

تَطْعِيمٌ, inoculation, vaccination.

أَطْعَمَ إِطْعَامًا iv, to feed, give food to eat.

اسْتَطْعَمَ اسْتِطْعَامًا x, to ask for food.

طَاعُونَ (طعن), plague.

أَطْفَأَ إِطْفَاءً iv, to put out (a fire). (طفأ)

انْطَفَأَ انْطِفَاءً vii (mt of iv), to be put out.

طَفِيفٌ (طفف), slight, little.

طَفَّفَ تَطْفِيفًا ii, to weigh or measure incorrectly. (#

مُطَفِّفٌ, pl~).

طَفِقَ الْوَلَدُ (طَفِقَ) (sis/k), to begin to do, e.g., طَفِقَ يَفْعَلُ (طَفِقَ) وَيَبْكِي, the boy began to cry.

أَطْفَالٌ (طَفَلَ), child, pl

طَلَبَ (طَلَبَ) (a-u) to seek.

طُلَّابٌ, طَلَبَةٌ, student, pl

طَلِبَةٌ, requirement, pl@.

طَلَّبَ (gr), verb signifying command, question etc., e.g., أَخْرُجْ، لَا تَخْرُجْ، هَلْ تَخْرُجُ؟

طَلَبِي (gr), a grammatical element containing e.g., أَشْرَبُ and لَا تَشْرَبُ are *talabî* verbs.

طَلَعَ (طَلَعَ) (a-u), to rise (of the sun).

اطَّلَعَ عَلَى الشَّيْءِ إِطْلَاعًا viii, to look into, be informed.

أَطْلَقَ إِطْلَاقًا (طَلَّقَ) iv, to set free, release.

مُطْلَقٌ (&iv), free, unrestricted, absolute.

مُطْلَقًا, absolutely, without exception.

الْمَفْعُولُ الْمُطْلَقُ (gr), *maçdar* of the verb occurring in the sentence used to emphasize the action, its

manner, or the number of its occurrence, e.g., سَجَدْتُ

سُجُودًا، سَجَدْتُ سُجُودًا طَوِيلًا، سَجَدْتُ سَجَدَتَيْنِ

(طمع) طَمِعَ طَمَعًا (i-a), to hope, desire, aspire, covet.

(طمأن) طَمَأَنَّ يُطْمِئِنُ طَمَأْنَةً (rb), to reassure, set someone's mind at rest, comfort.

اطْمَأَنَّ اطْمَأْنَانًا (rbiii), to be comforted, be reassured.

(طمطم) طَمَطِمٌ (!) (sjj), tomato.

(طهر) طَهَرَ طَهَارَةً (u-u), to be clean.

طَاهِرٌ, clean.

طَهُورٌ, clean; means of cleansing. (When visiting a

patient it is *sunnah* to say to him طَهُورٌ إِنْ شَاءَ

لَا بَأْسَ، طَهُورٌ إِنْ شَاءَ 1, 'May no harm come to you, and may your indisposition be a means of cleansing you (from your sins).'

طُورٌ سَيْنِينَ (طور) Mount Sinai.

أَطَاعَ إِطَاعَةً (طوع) iv, to obey.

تَطَوَّعَ تَطَوُّعًا (#) (متطوع) v, to volunteer.

---

<sup>1</sup> - Reported by Imam al-Bukhari in his *Çahîh*, Kitab al-Mardâ:10.

أَسْتَطِيعُ, to be able, can, e.g., اسْتَطَاعَ يَسْتَطِيعُ اسْتَطَاعَةً  
(مُسْتَطَاعٌ &), أَنُ أَتَحَدَّثُ بِالْفِرَنْسِيَّةِ, I can speak French.

(#iii) (gr), a verb in the active voice but with passive meaning in relation to another form of the same verb, e.g., فَتَحْتُ الْبَابَ, I opened the door, and انْفَتَحَ الْبَابُ, the door opened. كَسَرْتُ الزُّجَاجَ, I smashed the glass, and تَكَسَّرَ الزُّجَاجُ, the glass was shattered to pieces.

مُطَاوَعَةٌ (gr) signifying the meaning of a مُطَاوَعٌ verb.

طَافَ يَطُوفُ طَوَافًا (طوف) (a-u), to go round the Ka'bah.

الطَّائِفُ, city near Makkah.

طَالَ يَطُولُ طُولًا (طول) (a-u), to be tall.

طَوِيلٌ, tall, fem طَوِيلَةٌ, pl\* طَوَالٌ.

طَوَالَ (zz), throughout, e.g., طَوَالَ الْعَامَ, throughout the year.

طَوَى يَطْوِي طَيًّا (طوي) (طوي), to fold (a paper, etc.).

طَوَى قَيْدَهُ, to strike the name off the register (in school). (# طَاوِ (الطَّاوِي) & مَطْوِيٌّ).

الطَّالِبُ الْمَطْوِيُّ قَيْدَهُ, the student whose name has been struck off the rolls.

طَابَ الشَّيْءُ يُطَيَّبُ طَيِّباً (طيب) (a-i), to be good, pleasant. طَابَ لَهُ الشَّيْءُ, to be one's liking.

طَابَ فُلَانٌ نَفْساً, to be cheerful.

أَطْيَبُ (أطيب) \$, good, pleasant.

طَيْبَةَ, another name of Madinah (often followed by الطَّيِّبَةَ).

طَارَ يَطِيرُ طَيْرَاناً (طير) (a-i), to fly.

طَائِرٌ, bird, pl طَيْرٌ (pl of طَيْرٌ is طُيُورٌ).

طَائِرَةٌ, airplane, pl@.

مَطَارٌ (smk), airport (literally, a place of flying), pl@.

طَيْفٌ (طيف), spectrum.

طِينٌ (طين), mud.

## ظ

(ظرف) ① (gr) a noun denoting the time or place of the action signified by the verb, e.g., انتظرْتُكَ . Here عِنْدَ is *zarf-u makân*, and سَاعَةً is *zarf-u zamân*. ② envepoe, pl\* ظُرُوفٌ.

أظفارٌ, nail, fingernail, pl\* ظُفْرٌ (ظفر).

ظَلَمَ ظُلْمًا (a-i), to wrong, do wrong, oppress, treat unjustly.

تَظَالَمُوا تَظَالُمًا vi, to wrong each other.

ظُلْمَةٌ, darkness. مُظْلِمٌ (#iv), dark.

ظَنَّ ظَنًّا (a-u), to think, deem (takes two objects which are originally *mubtada'* and *khavar*), e.g.,

أظنُّكَ طالبًا → أَنْتَ طالبٌ.

The nominal sentence may also be joined to ظَنَّ using أَنَّ, e.g., أظنُّ أَنَّكَ

طالبٌ.

ظُنٌّ, assumption, doubt; suspicion, pl ظُنُونٌ. See

...Shun 'أَجْتَنِبُوا كَثِيرًا مِّنَ الظَّنِّ إِنَّ بَعْضَ الظَّنِّ إِثْمٌ', Q49:12,



much suspicion, for indeed suspicion in some cases is a sin.'

(ظَهَرَ) ظهر, midday. صَلَاةُ الظُّهْرِ, midday prayer.

ظَهْرٌ, back (anatomy), *pl* ظُهُورٌ.

ظَهَرَ ظُهُورًا (a-a), to appear, become visible.

ظَاهِرٌ, visible, apparent. اسْمٌ ظَاهِرٌ (*gr*), noun (as opposed to ضَمِيرٌ, pronoun).

أَظْهَرَ إِظْهَارًا iv, to make something appear, to render victorious.

تَظَاهَرَ تَظَاهُرًا v, to pretend.

## ع

(عَبَثَ) (i-a), to fool around.

(عَبَدَ) (a-u), to worship.

عَابِدٌ, worshipper, *pl* عِبَادٌ.

عَبْدٌ, slave, servant, servant of God, *pl* عِبِيدٌ.

(عَبَّرَ) عِبْرَةٌ, word, sentence, expression, *pl*@

عَبَّرَ, consideration. باعْتَبَرَ كَذَا, with respect to, considering.

(عَبَسَ) عَبَسٌ, to frown. (# عَبَسَ, عَبَسٌ), (عَبَسَ).

(عَجِبَ) (i-a), to wonder, to be astonished.

عَجِيبٌ, wonderful, strange.

تَعَجَّبَ v, to wonder.

فِعْلُ التَّعَجُّبِ (*gr*), 'verb of wonder', i.e., a grammatical form to express astonishment. This verb has two forms: مَا أَفْعَلُهُ and أَفْعَلُ بِهِ.

e.g., **أَجْمَلُ بِالْقَمَرِ!** and **مَا أَجْمَلُ الْقَمَرَ!** how beautiful the moon is!

**أَعْجَبَ إِعْجَابًا** iv, to please, delight, appeal, e.g., **أَعْجَبَنِي كَلَامُهُ**, his style of talking delighted me or appealed to me.

**أَنَا مُعْجَبٌ** (&iv), pleased, delighted, e.g., **بِدُرُوسِكَ**, I am delighted by your lessons. (= I like your lessons), **أَنَا مُعْجَبٌ بِكَ**, I like you.

**عَجَّلَ تَعْجِيلًا (عَجَل)** ii, to speed up, expedite.

**اسْتَعْجَلَ اسْتِعْجَالًا** x, to be in a hurry.

**عَجَلَةٌ** ① haste, hurry. ② wheel, *pl@*, **عَجَلٌ**.

**مَعَاجِمٌ** (*pl*) dictionary, **مُعْجَمٌ (عَجَم)**.

**أَعْجَمِيٌّ**, non-Arab.

**عَلْمٌ أَعْجَمِيٌّ** (*gr*), non-Arabic proper noun.

**عَدَّ عَدًّا (عَدَد)** (a-u), to count (# **عَادٌ** & **مَعْدُودٌ**).

**تَعَدَّدَ تَعَدُّدًا** v, to be numerous, manifold. (# **مُتَعَدِّدٌ**).

**اسْتَعَدَّ اسْتِعْدَادًا** x, to prepare oneself, get ready.

عَدَدٌ, number. مَعْدُودٌ (*gr*) the item that is counted.

عَدَسٌ (عدس), lentil.

عَدَلَ عَدَالَةً (عدل) (a-i), to act justly.

مُعْتَدِلٌ (#viii), moderate.

مَعْدُولٌ (*gr*), 'transformed'. The form فَعُلٌ is transformed from its original from فَاعِلٌ, e.g., عَامِرٌ → عَمْرٌ.

عَدَمٌ, nonexistence, absence, e.g., سَبَبِ عَدَمِ because of your not attending ..., حُضُورِكَ عَدَمٌ فَهَمِهِ, his failure to understand the problem resulted in this.

جَنَّاتُ عَدْنٍ (عدن), name of Gardens in Paradise.

تَعَدَّى تَعَدِّيًّا (عدو) v ❶ to overstep, traverse, go beyond. ❷ (*gr*) to be transitive (a transitive verb is one in which the action goes beyond the subject, and affects the object, e.g., ضَرَبَ بِلَالٌ عَلِيًّا, 'Bilal hit Ali.' In the intransitive verb, on the hand, the action does not go beyond the subject, e.g., نَامَ بِلَالٌ, 'Bilal slept.').

فَعَلٌ مُتَعَدٌّ, transitive verb (as opposed to لَازِمٌ).

عَدَّى الفِعْلَ تَعْدِيَةً ii (gr), to transform an intransitive verb into a transitive verb.

هَمْزَةُ التَّعْدِيَةِ (gr), the هَمْزَةٌ at the beginning of form iv (e.g., أَجْلَسَ) as it transforms an intransitive verb into transitive one.

عُدْوَانٌ, aggression, transgression.

مَا عَدَا (followed by a *mançûb* noun), except, e.g.,  
حَضَرَ الطُّلَّابُ كُلُّهُمْ مَا عَدَا حَامِدًا, all the students except Hamid were present.

عَذَرَ عُدْرًا، وَمَعَذَرَهُ (عذر) (a-i), to excuse, absolve from guilt.

اعْتَذَرَ إِلَى فُلَانٍ اعْتِذَارًا viii, to apologize.

أَعَذَرَ، excuse, pl

عَرَبِيٌّ (عرب) (szj), Arabs, sing

اللُّغَةُ الْعَرَبِيَّةُ، Arabic language.

مُعْرَبٌ (&iv) (gr), a noun that changes its endings to indicate its function in the sentence, e.g.,  
دَخَلَ الْوَلَدُ، (as opposed to مَبْنِيٌّ  
سَأَلْتُ الْوَلَدَ، ذَهَبْتُ إِلَى الْوَلَدِ

which does not change its endings, e.g., دَخَلَ هَوْلًا،  
(سَأَلْتُ هَوْلًا، ذَهَبْتُ إِلَى هَوْلًا).

أَعْرَبَ إِعْرَابًا iv (gr) ① to indicate the system of the case-endings of a word, e.g., يُعْرَبُ عِشْرُونَ إِعْرَابَ جَمْعٍ، the word عِشْرُونَ takes the same case-endings as the sound masculine plural. ② to analyze a sentence indicating the function of each word, its case-ending, and the reason for taking such an ending.<sup>1</sup>

عَرَجَ عُرُوجًا (a-u), to ascend.

عُرْجٌ، lame, fem عَرَجَاءُ، pl\* عُرْجٌ.

عُرُوشٌ pl\* ② roof. ① عَرْشٌ throne. (عرش).

(مَعْرُوفٌ &). عَرَفَ مَعْرِفَةً (a-i), to know. (عرف).

المَعْرُوفُ (šr), virtues recommended by the Divine Law (as opposed to المُنْكَرُ).

مَعَارِفٌ pl (gr), definite noun, مَعْرِفَةٌ.

---

<sup>1</sup> In the Indian subcontinent the word إِعْرَابٌ means vowel-signs. This is wrong.

عَرَّفَ الاسْمَ تَعْرِيفًا (gr), to make a noun definite. (& مُعَرَّفٌ).

تَعَارَفُوا تَعَارُفًا vi, to know each other.

العِرَاقُ (عرق) Irak.

مَعَارِكُ (عراك) مَعْرَكَةٌ, battle, pl

عَرِيَ يَعْرِى عُرِيًا (عري) (i-a), to be naked.

عُرَاةٌ (العاري) (#), naked, pl

أَعْزَابٌ (عزب) unmarried, pl

عَزَّ عِزًّا، وَعِزَّةٌ (عزز) (a-i), to be strong, powerful, honoured. (# عَزِيزٌ).

عُسْرٌ (عسر) difficulty.

عَسَكَرَ عَسْكَرَةً (عسكر) (rb), to camp.

مُعَسْكَرٌ (smk), camp, pl@.

(عسى) (sis/k) a verb with the meaning of the particle لَعَلَّ, i.e., hope and fear, e.g, عَسَى اللَّهُ أَنْ يَتُوبَ عَلَيْهِمْ (Q9:102), 'It is hoped that Allah will forgive

them.' وَعَسَىٰ أَن تَكْرَهُوا شَيْئًا وَهُوَ خَيْرٌ لَّكُمْ (Q2:216), 'It is feared that you may dislike a thing though it is good for you.'

Its *khavar* is always *çmw*. It is also used as a *tm* verb in which case the *çmw* is its فاعل, e.g., عَسَىٰ أَنْ يَغْفِرَ, and الله لي, it is hoped that Allah will forgive me.

عَسَى is a *jmd* verb, and only its *mâdî* is used.

عُشْبٌ (عشْب) herb.

اعشوشبَ الْمَكَانُ. xi, to be full of herbal growth.

عَشْرَةٌ أَبْنَاءٌ, e.g., عَشْرٌ fem, ten, عَشْرَةٌ (عشر) وَعَشْرُ بَنَاتٍ.

عَشْرٌ, one-tenth, pl أعشار. Note: تِسْعَةٌ أَغْشَارٌ, nine tenths.

عِشْرُونَ, twenty (*masc/fem*).

عِشْرُونَ, twentieth, e.g., هَذَا هُوَ الدَّرْسُ الْعِشْرُونَ, this is the 20<sup>th</sup> lesson.

مَعَشِرٌ, company, group, pl مَعْشَرٌ.

عِشَاءٌ (عشو) beginning of nightfall.

صَلَاةُ الْعِشَاءِ, 'ishâ' prayer.



عَشَاءٌ, supper.

تَعَشَّى تَعَشِيًّا, to have supper, sup.

(عَصِر) afternoon. صَلَاةُ الْعَصْرِ, afternoon prayer.

(عَصْفَر) عَصَافِيرُ, sparrow, pl

عِصِيٌّ, عِصِيٌّ, pl عِصِيٌّ (fem) عَصَا (عَصَو)

عَاصٍ (# عَاصِيٌّ), to disobey (a-i), عَصَى يَعْصِي عِصْيَانًا، وَمَعْصِيَةً  
(عُصَاةٌ pl, (العاصي).

(عَضَّض) عَضَّضْتُ (i-a), عَضَّ عَضًّا (عضض)

(عَاطَسَ) عَاطَسَ عَاطَسًا، وَعَاطَسًا (عَطَس) (#  
عَاطِسٌ).

عُطَّاسٌ, sneeze.

(عَطَف) عَطَفٌ (gr), joining words, sentences and

phrases using word like وَ، أَوْ etc. which are called

أَحْرَفُ الْعَطْفِ. The second word is called مَعْطُوفٌ، and

the first مَعْطُوفٌ عَلَيْهِ، e.g., أَيْنَ حَامِدٌ وَبِلَالٌ؟

مُنْعَطَفٌ (smkvii), (road) bend, curve, pl@.

عُطَّلٌ, holiday, pl عُطَّلَةٌ (عطل)

أَعْطَى يُعْطِي إِعْطَاءً (عطو) iv, to give. (Takes two objects, e.g., (أَعْطَيْتُ حَامِداً كِتَاباً).

مِعْطَاءٌ (♁ masc/fem), one who gives without bounds.

عَافٍ (# عَافٍ) عَافَا عَنْ فُلَانٍ يُعْفُو عَفْواً (عفو) (مُعْفُوٌّ & العَافِي).

عَافَى iii, to restore to health.

عَاقَبَ مُعَاقَبَةً، وَعَقَاباً (عقب) iii, to punish.

عُقْدَةٌ, knot, pl عُقَدٌ (a-i), to tie. (عقد)

عَقْرَبٌ (mostly fem), scorpion, pl عَقْرَبٌ (عقرب)

عَقَلَ عَقْلاً (a-i), to understand, be reasonable, realize.

عَاقِلٌ, reasonable, sensible, sane in mind. (gr), rational, intelligent, i.e., human beings. Animals and things are غَيْرُ عَاقِلٍ.

عُلبَةٌ, box, case, tin, pl عُلبٌ (علب)

عَالَجَ مُعَالَجَةً، وَعِلَاجاً (علج) iii, to treat (a patient).

عِلَاجٌ (çiii), medical treatment.

عَلَقٌ (علق) coagulated blood; leech.

عَلَاقَةٌ, connection, *pl@*.

عَلَّقَ تَعْلِيْقًا ii, to suspend, hang.

عَلِمَ عِلْمًا (علم) (i-a), to know. (عَلِمَ, one who knows thoroughly).

عَالِمٌ, learned man, scholar, *pl* عُلَمَاءُ.

عِلْمٌ, knowledge, science, *pl* عُلُومٌ.

عَلِمٌ (*gr*), proper name, *pl* أَعْلَامٌ.

عَلَّمَ تَعْلِيمًا ii, to teach.

تَعَلَّمَ تَعَلُّمًا v, to learn.

عَالَمٌ, world, *pl*~ (عَالَمُونَ).

عَلَامَةٌ, sign, *pl* عِلَامَاتٌ.

عِلَامَاتُ الْإِعْرَابِ (*gr*), endings denoting the functions of a word in a sentence. These endings are either primary or secondary.

عِلَّةٌ, reason, *pl* عِلَلٌ.

حُرُوفُ الْعِلَّةِ (*gr*), the three 'weak letters' (ا، و، ي).

اعْتَلَّ الْفِعْلُ اعْتِلَالًا (*gr*), to have a 'weak letter' as one of the radicals.

وَزَنَ، قَالَ، (gr), a weak verb, i.e., a verb with a 'weak letter' as one of the radicals, e.g.,

بَكَى. (المِثَالُ) المُعْتَلُّ الْفَاءِ, a verb with a weak letter as the first radical, e.g., وَزَنَ يَزِنُ, to weigh, يَتِمُّ يَتِمُّ, to be an orphan.

الْمُعْتَلُّ الْعَيْنِ (الأَجْوَفُ), a verb with a weak letter as the second radical, e.g., قَالَ يَقُولُ, to say, طَارَ يَطِيرُ, to fly.

الْمُعْتَلُّ اللَّامِ (النَّاقِصُ), a verb with a weak letter as the third radical, e.g., دَعَا يَدْعُو, to call, هَدَى يَهْدِي, to guide.

أَعْلَنَ إِعْلَانًا (علن) iv, to announce.

عَلَا يَعْلوُ عُلُوًّا (علو) (a-u), to be high.

عَالٍ (العَالِي), high, loud, e.g., بِصَوْتٍ عَالٍ, in a loud voice.

تَعَالَى vi ① to ascend (only the *amr* of the verb in this sense تَعَالَ, *come!* is used. تَعَالَ originally meant *ascend!*). ② to be high, to be exalted. Note: اللهُ تَعَالَى, Allah exalted is He.

تَعَالَى, come!, *pl* تَعَالُوا, *fem* تَعَالِي, *pl* تَعَالِينَ.

عَلَى (*hj*) (with a pronoun عَلَيَّ), on, upon.

عَلَى أَنْ, on condition that..., provided, e.g., سَأَشْتَرِي هَذَا الْكِتَابَ بِمِائَةِ رِيَالٍ عَلَى أَنْ تُسَلِّمَهُ لِي غَدًا, I will buy this book for 100 riyals provided you deliver it to me tomorrow. (See Q28:27).

عُمْدَةٌ (عمد), part of a sentence which cannot be dispensed with like مَبْتَدَأٌ and حَبْرٌ in a nominal sentence, and فَاعِلٌ in a verbal sentence (as opposed to فَضْلَةٌ which can be dispensed with like نَعْتٌ, حَالٌ, etc.).

عِمَارَةٌ (عمر), building, *pl* عِمَائِرٌ.

عُمْرَةٌ, 'umrah (the lesser pilgrimage).

عَمِلَ عَمَلًا (عمل), to work.

عَمِلَ بِكَذَا, to act according to something.

أَعْمَالٌ, work, *pl* عَمَلٌ.

① عَامِلٌ labourer, worker, *pl* عُمَّالٌ. ② (*gr*) a word which effects a change in the case-ending of a neighbouring word in a sentence, e.g., in فِي الْبَيْتِ the word فِي has changed from مَرْفُوعٌ to مَجْرُورٌ, and in قَرَأْتُ الْكِتَابَ the word قَرَأَ has changed from مَرْفُوعٌ to مَنْصُوبٌ. In the first example فِي is عَامِلٌ and الْبَيْتِ is مَعْمُولٌ, and the change effected is عَمَلٌ. The *pl* of عَامِلٌ in this sense is عَوَامِلٌ.

اسْتَعْمَلَ اسْتِعْمَالًا x, to use.

عُمَلَةٌ, currency, *pl@* (عُمَلَاتٌ).

[عَمٌّ], about what (= مَا + عَنْ), e.g., عَمَّ تَسْأَلُنِي؟, what are you asking me about?

عَمٌّ, paternal uncle, *pl* أَعْمَامٌ, *fem* عَمَّةٌ, *pl@*.

تَعْمِيمٌ (çii), circular, notification.

عُمِّيٌّ\* *pl*, عَمِيَاءُ, *fem* أَعْمَى, blind, *fem* عَمِيٌّ.

تَعَامَى vi, to feign blindness.

(عَنْ) (hj) about, concerning, off, from, on the authority of.

عَمَّ (for عَنْ مَا), about what.

عَنْ مَنْ - عَمَّنْ - عَمَّنْ, e.g., وَمَنْ بَعَثْتُمْ، whom are you looking for?

عِنَبٌ (sjj), grapes, سِنْجَةٌ.

عِنْدَ (zz/zm), at, with. أَنَا عِنْدَ الْمُدِيرِ، I am with the headmaster/ I am at the headmaster's. مَا عِنْدِي، I do not have car. مَاذَا عِنْدَكَ؟، what do you have.

عِنْدَمَا، when, e.g., عِنْدَمَا زِلْتُ إِلَى الْجَامِعَةِ مَرَرْتُ، when I was going to the university, I dropped into the bookshop.

عِنْدَلِبٌ (عندل)، nightingale, pl عِنَادِلٌ.

عَنِيفٌ (عنف)، violent.

عَنَّاكِبٌ (عنكب)، spider, pl عَنَّاكِبٌ.

عُنَاوِينٌ (عنن)، address, pl عُنَاوَانٌ.

مَاذَا يَعْنِي (i-a) to mean, e.g., عَنَى يَعْنِي عَنِيَاً (عني)  
هَذَا، what does this mean?

مَعَانٍ (المَعَانِي) *pl*, meaning, (!!), مَعْنَى.

مَعَاهِدٌ *pl*, institute (a school for a particular  
subject), مَعَهْدٌ (عهد).

عُوجٌ\* *pl*, عَوْجَاءُ *fem*, crooked, curved, أَعْوَجُ (عوج).

ix, to become crooked. اعْوَجَّ اعْوِجَاجًا.

عَادَ ② (a-u) عَادَ يَعُودُ عَوْدًا، وَعَوْدَةٌ (عود) ① to return.

عَائِدٌ ① one visiting the sick, *pl* عَوَادٌ ② (*gr*) a  
pronoun in the صِلَاةُ الْمَوْصُولِ which refers to the

أَيْنَ الطَّالِبَةُ الَّتِي أَبُوهَا مَرِيضٌ؟ e.g., in, وَالاسْمُ الْمَوْصُولُ  
الَّتِي هَا is the عَائِدٌ as it refers to

عِيَادَةٌ, clinic, *pl@*.

عَادَةٌ, habit, *pl@*.

أَعْيَادٌ *pl*, festival, عِيدٌ.

(عود) عَادَ بِاللَّهِ يَعُودُ عِيَادًا (عود) to seek refuge.



اسْتَعَاذَ بِاللَّهِ يَسْتَعِيذُ اسْتِعَاذَةً x, to seek/take refuge in

Allah, pronounce اَعُوذُ بِاللَّهِ مِنَ الشَّيْطَانِ الرَّجِيمِ, I take refuge in Allah against the cursed Satan.

عُورٌ\* pl, عَوْرَاءُ fem, one-eyed, (عور).

عَوَائِلُ pl@, family, (عول).

أَعْوَامٌ pl, year, (عوم).

عَوْنٌ help, (عون).

تَعَاوَنُوا تَعَاوَنًا vi, to cooperate.

اسْتَعَانَ بِفُلَانٍ اسْتِعَانَةً x, to seek help, to take help.

(مُسْتَعَانٌ & مُسْتَعِينٌ #).

عُيُوبٌ pl, defect, fault, flaw, (عيوب).

عَاشَ يَعِيشُ عَيْشًا (عيش). (# عَائِشٌ).

عَائِشَةٌ (!), feminine proper name (literally, living).

عَيْشَةٌ (ch), way of life.

عَيْلَةٌ (عيل), poverty, indigence.

(عَيْنُ) (عين) ① eye. ② spring (of water) *pl\**  
 ③ the letter ع. ④ (*gr*) the  
 second radical of the word such as ت in كَتَبَ.  
 عَيْنُ تَعْيِينًا ii, to specify, earmark, appoint,  
 single out.  
 عَيْنُ عَيْنًا, wide-eyed, *fem* عَيْنَاءُ, *pl\** عَيْنُ (for  
 عَيْنُ. The *dammaḥ* has been changed to *kasraḥ* in  
 view of the following ي.)

---

<sup>1</sup> In the Qur'an عَيْنُ is the *pl* of the word in the first sense, and عِيُونُ in the second sense.

# غ

[غَابَةٌ], forest. *See* غَيْب.

[غَانَا], Ghana.

أَغْبِيَاءُ, stupid, *pl* غَبِيٍّ (غَبِي).

غَبَاءٌ, stupidity.

بَعْدَ غَدٍ, the day after tomorrow. غَدًا (غَدُو).

غَدَاةٌ, early morning.

غَدَاءٌ, lunch (*formerly*, breakfast, *see* Q18:62).

تَغَدَّى تَغَدِيًا vi, to have lunch.

غَرَبَتِ الشَّمْسُ غُرُوبًا (غَرَب) (a-u), to set.

مَغْرِبٌ (smk/sz), ❶ west (place of sunset), *pl* مَغَارِبُ.

❷ time of sunset.

عَلَى غَرَارٍ ذَلِكَ, in this manner, on this pattern. غَرَارٌ (غَرَر).

غَرَزَ غَرَزًا (غَرَز) (a-i), to prick, thrust, insert.

غَرَّغَرَ (rb) ① to gargle. ② to be in the throes of death.

غُرْفٌ, room, pl@ (غُرْفَاتٌ), غُرْفَةٌ.

غِرَامٌ, gram, pl@ (غِرَامٌ).

غَزَا يَعْزُو غَزَوْا (a-u), to wage war. (# غَازٍ (الغَازِي), غَزَاةٌ pl).

غَزَوَةٌ بدرٌ, Battle of Badr. (غَزَوَاتٌ) pl@, battle, غَزَوَةٌ.

غَسَلَ (a-i), to wash. (غَسَلٌ).

اغْتَسَلَ (viii), to take a bath. (اغْتَسَالٌ).

غُسْلٌ, bath.

غَشَّ (a-u), to act dishonestly, deceive, fool, mislead. (غَشَشٌ).

غَضِبَ عَلَى فُلَانٍ غَضَبًا (i-a), to be or become angry. (غَضَبٌ).

غَضَبٌ\* pl, غَضَبِي fem, angry, غَضَبَانُ.

أَغْضَبَ فُلَانًا إِغْضَابًا (iv), to make somebody angry, anger, enrage.

تَغَاضَى عَنِ الشَّيْءِ تَغَاضِيًا (v), to overlook, ignore. (تَغَاضٍ).

(غَافِرٌ #) (a-i), to forgive. (غَفِرَ غُفْرَانًا، وَمَغْفِرَةً (غَفِرَ).

(غَفَّارٌ) (غُفُورٌ، وَغَفَّارٌ), one who forgives excessively.

اسْتَغْفَرَ اسْتِغْفَارًا x, to seek forgiveness.

غَفَلَ عَنِ الْأَمْرِ غَفْلَةً (غَفَلَ), be unmindful, heedless.

غَلَبَ غَلَبَةً (a-i), to subdue, conquer, overcome, overpower.

غَالِبًا, mostly, for the most part.

تَغْلِبُ (çii) (gr) to treat a combination of *masc* and *fem* elements as *masc*, e.g., أَبْنَائِي وَبَنَاتِي 'my sons and daughters are studying at the university.' Here the *masc* form يَدْرُسُونَ is used though the pronoun refers to sons and daughters.

غَلَفَ (غَلَفَ), cover (of a book or magazine), *pl* غُلْفٌ.

أَغْلَقَ iv, to close (a door etc.). (& مُغْلَقٌ, closed).

غَلَقَ تَغْلِيْقًا ii, to close (doors) (denoting تَكْثِيرٌ).

غِلْمَانٌ, boy, youth, *pl* غُلَامٌ (غِلْم).

غَالِيَةٌ (غَالِي), expensive, costly, fem

غَمَّضَ ii, to close (eyes).

اغْتَنَمَ الْفُرْصَةَ اغْتِنَامًا (غَنِم), to seize the opportunity.

أَغْنِيَاءُ (غَنِي), rich, pl

أَغْنَى iv, to make rich, enrich.

اسْتَغْنَى عَنِ الشَّيْءِ اسْتِغْنَاءً x, to dispense with, have no need of.

غَائِبٌ (#) (a-i), to be absent.

غَائِبٌ (gr), third person (he, she, it, they).

غَيْبَةٌ, backbiting. اغْتَابًا اغْتِيَابًا viii, to backbite.

غَابَةٌ, forest, pl@.

غَيْرٌ (followed by *mudâf ilaihi*) not, e.g.,

غَيْرٌ صَاحِحٌ, incorrect. ② except,

e.g., حَضَرَ الطُّلَّابُ غَيْرُ بِلَالٍ, the students attended except Bilal.

غَيَّرَ ii, to change, alter.

# ف

(فَ (hf), and then, دَخَلَ بِلَالٌ فَحَامِدٌ, Bilal came in and then Hamid.

It is attached to certain types of جَوَابُ الشَّرْطِ, e.g., إِذَا قَابَلْتَ بِلَالاً فَأْتِنِي بِهِ, if you meet Bilal, bring him to me.

فَاءُ (فاء), the letter ف.

(مُتَفَائِلٌ (#) تَفَائِلٌ تَفَائِلٌ vi, to be optimistic. (فَال).

فِيءَاتٌ (فَأَي) فِئَةٌ, company, group, pl

فَتْحٌ (a-a) ① to open. ② (gr) to pronounce a letter with a فَتْحَةٌ (& مَفْتُوحٌ).

فَتْحَةٌ, the vowel *a* as in *sat*, and its sign (ـَـ), pl@ (فَتْحَاتٌ).

فَاتِحَةٌ, opening, beginning. سُورَةُ الْفَاتِحَةِ, name of the first *sûrah* of the Qur'an.

مِفْتَاحٌ (sl), key, pl مِفْتَاحَاتٌ.

انْفَتَحَ vii (*mt* of *i*), to open (by itself), e.g., وَدَخَلَ الْمُدِيرُ، وَانْفَتَحَ الْبَابُ، the door opened and the director entered. وَهَذَا الْبَابُ لَا يَنْفَتِحُ، this door does not open.

اسْتَفْتَحَ x, to commence.

دُعَاءُ الْاِسْتِفْتَاكِ، commencement supplication.

الْاَلَا used at the *beginning* of a sentence to draw the attention of the listener/reader to the important statement following it as in Q10:62.,

اَلَا اِنَّ اَوْلِيَاءَ اللّٰهِ لَا خَوْفٌ

عَلَيْهِمْ وَلَا هُمْ يَحْزَنُونَ، 'Lo! Verily Allah's friends will have no fear, nor will they grieve.'

ii, to inspect. (فَتَّشَ)

(#ii), inspector (in schools), *pl*~.

فِتْنَةٌ، trial and temptation, *pl* فِتْنٌ.

فِتْيَانٌ، young man, *pl* فِتْيَانٌ، *fem* فِتْيَانَةٌ،

(فِتْيَاتٌ) *pl@*، فَتَاةٌ.

فَتَاوَى، فَتَاوَى (الْفَتَاوَى) *pl*، religious ruling, (!) فَتْوَى.



(مُفْتٍ (المُفْتِي) (#) iv, to issue a *fatwa*.

اسْتَفْتَى اسْتَفْتَاءً x, to seek a *fatwa*.

(فَجْأً) (hâl), suddenly.

إِذَا الفُجْأِيَّةُ. فُجْأَةً, same as فُجْأَةً, the particle إِذَا

denoting surprise. See إِذَا.

فَجْرٌ (فجر) dawn. سُورَةُ الْفَجْرِ, name of a *sûrah* of the Qur'an.

فَجَّارٌ, libertine, debauchee, pl فَجْرَةٌ.

فَجَّرَ تَفْجِيرًا ii, to make water gush forth, to explode.

انْفَجَرَ انْفِجَارًا vii, to burst, explode.

فَخْرٌ (فخر) pride.

فَرِحَ بِفُلَانٍ فَرِحًا (فرح) (#) فَرِحٌ (i-a), be pleased, glad (وَفَرِحَانٌ).

① مُفْرَدٌ (فرد) (gr), singular. ② (gr) opposite of a sentence, e.g., in بِلَالٍ يَجْتَهِدُ, the *khavar* is a sentence, and in بِلَالٌ مُجْتَهِدٌ it is a *mufrad*.

أَفْرَدَ إِفْرَادًا iv (gr), to render a word singular.

مُفْرَدَاتٌ, words.

الفَارِسِيَّةُ (فرس), Persian (language).

فُرْصَةٌ, opportunity, *pl* فُرُصٌ.

فِرَاعُونَ, Pharaoh, *pl* فِرَاعِنَةٌ.

فَرَغَ فَرَاحًا (فرغ) (a-u), finish, conclude.

فَرَاحٌ ① finishing, conclusion. ② blank space in a sentence to be filled by the student, *pl*@.

فَرَّغَ تَفْرِيعًا ii, to empty.

اِسْتِثْنَاءٌ (gr) a type of اِسْتِثْنَاءٌ wherein the مُفْرَغٌ (&ii) is not mentioned, e.g., مَا جَاءَ إِلَّا بِلَالٍ، مَا رَأَيْتُ إِلَّا بِلَالًا.

فُرُوقٌ, difference, *pl* فُرُوقٌ (فرق).

فُرُقَاءٌ, team (in sports), *pl* فُرُقٍ.

اِفْتَرَقَ اِفْتِرَاقًا viii, to be separated.

مُفْتَرَقُ الطَّرِيقِ (smkviii), crossroads.

فَرَّقَ فَرَقَةً (rb), to crack the joints of one's fingers.

اِفْرَنْقَعَ اِفْرَنْقَاعًا (rbiv), to disperse.

France, فِرْنَسَا (فرنس)

French (language), (اللُّغَةُ) الفِرْنَسِيَّةُ

tea-break (between lessons at school), فُسْحَةٌ (فسح)

(# فاسِدٌ), to rot, decay. (a-u), فَسَدَ فَسَادًا (فسد)

iv, to spoil, corrupt, make mischief. أَفْسَدَ إِفْسَادًا

ii, to explain, expound, elucidate. (فسر) فَسَّرَ تَفْسِيرًا

commentary of the Glorious Qur'an, تَفْسِيرٌ, exegesis.

x, to enquire. اسْتَفْسَرَ اسْتِفْسَارًا

(a-u), فَسَقَ فَسُوقًا (فسق) to deviate from the right course, act sinfully and immorally. (# فاسِقٌ, pl فَسَاقَةٌ).

(a-u), فَشَا فَشُورًا (فشو) to spread, e.g., فَشَا هَذَا الْمَرَضُ, this disease has widely spread. كَثِيرًا

iv, to spread, disseminate, divulge (a secret). أَفْشَى إِفْشَاءً

classroom, pl فَصُولٌ (فصل)

فَصَلَ فَصَلًا (a-i), to expel (from school etc.), to separate, cut off. (& مَفْصُولٌ).

فَاصِلٌ (gr), a word coming between two words which usually remain together.

فَصَّلَ تَفْصِيلاً ii, to deal with the subject in detail.

مُفَصَّلٌ (&ii), detailed, in detail.

انْفَصَلَ انْفِصَالًا vii, to be separated.

ضَمِيرٌ مُنْفَصِلٌ (gr), the independent (detached) form of the pronoun like أَنْتَ (as opposed to تَ attached to a verb), and إِيَّاكَ (as opposed to كَ attached to a verb or a particle).

انْفِصَالَ (gr), using the independent form the pronoun.

فَضَّ فَضًّا (a-u), to disperse, break up. (فَضْضٌ)

انْفَضَّ انْفِضَاضًا vii (mt of i) to be scattered.

فِضَّةٌ, silver.

فَضْلٌ (فضل), grace, favour, kindness.

فَضِيلَةٌ, moral excellence, merit, virtue, pl فَضَائِلٌ.

فَضِيلَةُ الشَّيْخِ, title of Islamic scholars, His Eminence.

فَضْلَةٌ (gr), an element in a sentence which can be dispensed with like حَالٌ، نَعْتٌ etc. (as opposed to عُمْدَةٌ which cannot be dispensed with like فَاعِلٌ etc.)

فَطُورٌ (فَطَرَ), breakfast.

أَفْطَرَ إِفْطَارًا iv, to have breakfast.

زَكَاتُ الْفِطْرِ, alms paid to the poor on the 'id al-Fitr day.

عِيدُ الْفِطْرِ, Ramadan festival on the first day of Šawwâl.

فَعَلَ فِعْلًا (a-a), to do.

أَفْعَالٌ (gr), verb, pl

فَاعِلٌ (gr), the subject of a verbal sentence with the verb in the active voice, فَتَحَ الْوَكْدُ الْبَابَ, the boy opened the door.

نَائِبُ الْفَاعِلِ (gr), the subject of a verbal sentence with the verb in the passive voice, وَفُتِحَ الْبَابُ, the door was opened.

مَفْعُولٌ بِهِ (gr) direct object, e.g., قَرَأْتُ الْكِتَابَ, I read the book.

مَفْعُولٌ فِيهِ (gr) a *mançûb* noun denoting the time or place of the verb, e.g., نَمْتُ تَحْتَ شَجَرَةٍ سَاعَةً, I slept under a tree for an hour.

مَفْعُولٌ لَهُ (also مَفْعُولٌ لِأَجْلِهِ) (gr) a *mançûb maçdar* explaining the reason why the action took place, e.g., بَقِيتُ فِي الْبَيْتِ خَوْفًا مِنَ الْحَرِّ الشَّدِيدِ, *fearing* the severe heat, I remained at home.

مَفْعُولٌ مَعَهُ (gr), a *mançûb* noun which follows a وَ meaning *with*, e.g., يَا بِلَالَ الْعَبِّ وَحَامِدًا, Bilal, play with Hamid.

مَفْعُولٌ مُطْلَقٌ (gr) *maçdar* of the verb occurring in the sentence used to emphasize the action, its manner, or the number of its occurrence, e.g., سَجَدْتُ سُجُودًا، سَجَدْتُ سُجُودًا طَوِيلًا، سَجَدْتُ سَجْدَتَيْنِ.

فُقَرَاءٌ، poor, pl فقيرٌ (فقر).

فِقْرَةٌ، فقراتٌ pl، paragraph, section, passage، فقرَةٌ.

فَاقِرَةٌ، great calamity, disaster.

فَقَطٌ، only, e.g., هَذَا الْقَلَمُ بِثَلَاثَةِ رِيَالٍ فَقَطٌ، this pen costs three riyals only.

فَقَدَّ فَقَدًا، وَفَقَدَانًا، وَفُقِدَانًا (فقد) (a-i), to lose.

فِقْهٌ (فقه) Islamic jurisprudence.

فِكْرٌ (فكر) idea, فِكْرَةٌ (فكرة).

فَكََّ فَكًّا (a-u), to disjoin, separate.

فَكََّ (gr), to restore the vowel between two identical

letters omitted due to إِدْغَامٌ, e.g., لَمْ يَحْجُجَّ → لَمْ

يَحْجُجُ. So فَكََّ is the opposite of إِدْغَامٌ.

فَوَاكِهِ (فكه) fruit, pl فَوَاكِيهِ.

فَاكِهَانِي (فكهاني) fruiterer.

الفَلِيبِّيْنَ (فلبين) the Philippines.

أَفْلَحَ إِفْلَاحًا (فلح) iv, to be successful. (# مُفْلِحٌ, pl~).

فَلَاحٌ (فلاح) farmer, pl~.

فَالَقَ (فالق) (#) فَالِقٌ (a-i), to split.

أَفْوَاهٌ (فوه) See [فم].

فَنَاجِيْنُ (فنجان) coffee cup, pl فَنَاجِيْنُ (فنجن).

فَنَادِقُ (فندق) hotel, pl فَنَادِقُ (فندق).

فَهِمَ فَهَمًا (i-a), to understand.

فَهَّم تَفْهِمًا ii, to make someone understand, explain.

• اسْتَفْهَمَ اسْتِفْهَامًا x, to ask, enquire.

اسْتَفْهَمَ (gr), question, interrogative statement.

مَا الاسْتِفْهَامِيَّةُ, the word مَا meaning *what*.

فَاتَ فَوَاتًا, وَفَوَاتًا (فوت) (a-u), to escape, elude. Note:

فَاتَتْنَا رَكْعَةً, فَاتَتْنَا الْقِطَارُ, I missed the train. فَاتَتْنَا رَكْعَةً, we missed one *rak'ah*.

دَخَلَ النَّاسُ فِي أَفْوَاجٍ (فوج) group, band, pl. Note:

دَخَلَ النَّاسُ فِي أَفْوَاجٍ, الإِسْلَامِ أَفْوَاجًا, people entered the faith of Islam in droves (in troops).

فَوْرًا (فور) (zz), at once, instantly. فَوْرًا (followed by

رَجَعَ فَوْرًا وَوُجُوهُهُ, immediately after, e.g., رَجَعَ فَوْرًا وَوُجُوهُهُ, he returned soon after he arrived.

فَازَ فَوْزًا (فوز) (a-u), to be successful, to triumph, achieve, accomplish.

فَوْضَى, فَوْضَى (فوض) confusion, chaos.

وَبَنَيْنَا فَوْقَكُمْ سَبْعًا شَدَادًا, (فوق) above. See Q78:12, 'And

We have built above you seven strong (heavens).'

تَفَوَّقَ تَفَوُّقًا v, to excel, surpass, be outstanding.



أَفْوَاهٌ *pl* mouth, فَمٌّ (فوه)

فِي (في) (*hj*), in, because of.

أَفَادَ يُفِيدُ إِفَادَةً (فيد) iv, to signify, notify, inform, be useful. (# مُفِيدٌ).

فَوَائِدٌ *pl* benefit, utility, advantage, profit, use, فَائِدَةٌ

اسْتَفَادَ يَسْتَفِيدُ اسْتِيفَادَةً x, to benefit, derive benefit.

فَيْنَةٌ (فين) moment, time.

الْفَيْنَةُ بَعْدَ الْفَيْنَةِ (zz), every now and then.

# ق

(قبط) قِبْطِيّ, Copt, Coptic.

قَبِلَ قَبُولًا (i-a), to accept.

قَبَّلَ تَقْبِيلًا ii, to kiss.

قُبِّلَ (قُبُلَاتٌ), kiss, pl@, قُبْلَةٌ.

قَابَلَ مُقَابَلَةً iii, to meet, have an interview.

تَقَبَّلَ تَقْبُلًا v, to accept, grant one's prayer.

اسْتَقْبَلَ اسْتِقْبَالًا x, to receive (a guest).

مُسْتَقْبَلٌ, future.

قَبْلَ (zz), before.

قُبَيْلٌ, a little before.

مِنْ قَبْلُ (mb), before (when the *إِلَيْهِ* is not mentioned, e.g., *كُنْتُ قَبْلَ ذَلِكَ مُدَرِّسًا*, 'I was a teacher before that (time/event)', but *كُنْتُ مِنْ قَبْلُ مُدَرِّسًا*, 'I was formerly a teacher.')

قِبْلَةٌ, direction of the *Ka'bah* to which Muslims turn during the *ṣalâh*.

قَبَائِلُ, tribe, *pl* قَبِيلَةٌ.

قَتَلَ قَتْلًا (a-u), to kill.

قَاتَلَ مُقَاتَلَةً, وَقَاتَلَ iii, to fight.

قَتِيلٌ, one who has been killed, *pl* قَتْلَى (!).

قَدَّ, with the *md* it signifies a completed action, e.g., قَدَّ وَصَلَتِ الطَّائِرَةُ, the plane has (already) arrived.

With the *mr* it signifies (a) probability, e.g., قَدْ يَزُورُكَ, Bilal might visit you today. (b) rarity, e.g., قَدْ يَصْدُقُ الكَذُوبُ, a liar may sometimes tell the truth.

قَدَرَ عَلَى الشَّيْءِ قُدْرَةً (a-i), to have power, to be able. (قَادِرٌ, قَادِرٌ #).

قَدْرٌ, extant, amount.

قُدُورٌ (*fem*), pot, *pl* قُدُورٌ.

بِتَقْدِيرٍ مُمْتَّازٍ, ① grade (in examination). ② (*gr*), the supposed original construction used to explain the existing one, e.g., يَبْكِي is

بِضَمَّةٍ مُقَدَّرَةٍ) as it was originally يُبْكِي.

مَقَادِيرُ (*gr*), what is determined by counting, weighing, cubic measurement or linear measurement.

مُقَدَّسٌ (& قَدَّسَ تَقْدِيسًا (قدس) ii, to hallow, sanctify. (holy).

قَدِمَ الْبَلَدَ قُدُومًا، وَمَقْدَمًا (قدم) (i-a), to come, arrive.

تَقَدَّمَ تَقْدُمًا v, to precede.

اسْتَقْدَمَ اسْتِقْدَامًا x, to precede, go before.

قُدَامِيّ، old, *pl* قَدِيمٌ.

أَقْدَامٌ (*fem*), foot, *pl* قَدَمٌ.

كُرَّةُ الْقَدَمِ، football.

قَرَأَ قِرَاءَةً (قراء) (a-a), to read.

قُرَّاءٌ *pl* قَارِئٌ، reader, reciter of the Qur'an,

الْقُرْآنُ، the Qur'an.

قَرِبَ الشَّيْءَ قُرْبًا (قرب) (i-a), to approach, go near.

اقتَرَبَ الشَّيْءَ اقْتِرَابًا viii, to draw near.

ذُو قُرْبَى, relative. قُرْبَى (!) kinship.

أَقْرَبَاءُ, relative, *pl* قَرِيبٌ.

اِقْتَرَحَ اقْتِرَاحًا (قَرَح) viii, to suggest, propose.

قُرُوشٌ, one tenth of a Saudi riyal, *pl* قَرِشٌ (قَرِش).

أَقْرَاصٌ, (medicinal) tablet, *pl* قُرُصٌ (قَرِص).

قُرُوضٌ, loan, *pl* قَرُوضٌ (قَرِض).

اسْتَقْرَضَ مِنْ فُلَانٍ اسْتِقْرَاضًا x, to ask for a loan.

أَقْرَضَ فُلَانًا إِقْرَاضًا iv, to lend, advance loan.

اِقْتَرَضَ مِنْ فُلَانٍ اِقْتِرَاضًا viii, to borrow.

قَرَارِطٌ, carat, karat (unit of measuring the purity of gold), *pl* قَرَارِطُ (قَرِط).

قَرَعَ الْجَرَسَ قَرْعًا (قَرِع) (a-a), to ring the bell.

اِقْتَرَنَ بِكَذَا اِقْتِرَانًا (قَرِن) viii, to be linked, be joined. (# مُقْتَرِنٌ).

قَرْيَةٌ, village, *pl* قُرَى (قَرِي).

قَزَحٌ (!), name of a mount in Muzdalifah. (قَزَح).

قَوْسٌ قُزَحٌ, rainbow.

أَقْسَطَ إِقْسَاطًا (قسط) iv, to act justly, deal fairly.

أَقْسَامٌ, division, kind, category, *pl* قِسْمٌ (قسم).

قَسَمٌ, oath.

حَرْفُ الْقَسَمِ, letter denoting oath like the و in وَاللَّهِ  
and the ت in تَاللَّهِ.

جَوَابُ الْقَسَمِ, the main statement that follows the oath  
like وَاللَّهِ إِنِّي لَمَرِيضٌ in إِنِّي لَمَرِيضٌ.

أَقْشَعَرَّ أَقْشَعْرَارًا (قشعر) (rbiii), to have goose-flesh  
(from fear).

قَصَدَ قَصْدًا (قصد) (a-i), to intend, have in mind.

قَصِيرٌ, short, *pl* قِصَارٌ (قصر).

قَصَرَ الشَّعْرَ تَقْصِيرًا ii, to shorten the hair.

أَلْفٌ, see الألفُ الْمُقْصُورَةُ.

قَصَّ قَصًّا (قصص) (a-u), to narrate.

قِصَّةٌ, narration, story, *pl* قِصَصٌ.

مَقْصِفٌ, canteen, *pl* مَقَاصِفٌ (قصف).

قَضَى قَضَاءً (قَضِيَ) (a-i), to spend (time); to judge, act as a judge; decree.

قُضِيَ قَضَاءٌ, judge, *pl* قَاضٍ (القَاضِي).

قَطَّرَ, train, *pl@* قِطَارٌ (قَطَر).

قَطَّطَ, قِطَاطٌ, *pl\** قِطَّةٌ, cat, *fem* قِطٌّ (قَطَط).

قَطُّ (mb/zz) (with negative verb in the *md*), never, e.g., مَا كَلَّمْتُهُ قَطُّ, I never spoke to him.

فَقَطُّ (mb), only, e.g., هَذَا بِمِائَةِ رِيَالٍ فَقَطُّ, this costs only hundred riyals.

قَطَعَ قَطْعًا (a-a), to cut.

قَطَّعَ تَقْطِيعًا ii, to cut into pieces.

تَقَطَّعَ تَقْطِيعًا v (*mt* of ii), to be cut into pieces.

انْقَطَعَ انْقِطَاعًا vii (*mt* of i) to be cut off.

مُنْقَطِعٌ (*gr*), a type of اسْتِثْنَاءٌ wherein the مُسْتَثْنَى مِنْهُ and the مُسْتَثْنَى belong to different categories, e.g., **وَلِكُلِّ دَاءٍ دَوَاءٌ إِلَّا الْمَوْتَ**, 'every disease has a cure except death.'

قَطَعٌ, piece, *pl* قِطْعَةٌ.

قَعَدَ قُعُودًا (a-u), to sit.

قُعُودٌ, sitting, *pl* قَاعِدٌ.

مَقَاعِدُ, seat, *pl* مَقَاعِدُ.

أَقْفَالٌ, lock, *pl* قُفْلٌ (قفل).

قَفَاً (!!) (*masc/fem*), nape (back part of the neck), *pl* أَقْفَاءٌ, قُفْيٌ.

قَلْبٌ, heart, *pl* قُلُوبٌ (قلب).

قَلَبَ قَلْبًا (a-i), to turn upside down. (& مَقْلُوبٌ).

انْقَلَبَ انْقِلَابًا vii, ❶ to be turned upside down. ❷ to

return, e.g., وَإِذَا انْقَلَبُوا إِلَىٰ أَهْلِهِمْ انْقَلَبُوا فَكِهِينَ (Q83:31), 'And when they returned to their folk, they returned jesting.'

أَقْلٌ (\$) قَلِيلٌ, few, little (in number or quantity).

قَبْلَ قَلِيلٍ, a short while ago.

بَعْدَ قَلِيلٍ, shortly, before long.

قَلَّلَ تَقْلِيلًا ii, to lessen, diminish.



قَدْ (gr), occasional occurrence denoted by قَدْ with the *mudâri'*, e.g., قَدْ يَصْدُقُ الْكَذُوبُ, a liar may sometimes tell the truth.

اسْتَقْلَّ اسْتَقْلَالًا x, to be independent.

مُسْتَقِلٌّ (#x), independent, separate.

أَقْلَامٌ, pen, pl قَلَمٌ (قلم).

مَقْلِيٌّ (& مَقْلِيٌّ), to fry. (a-i) قَلَى قَلِيًّا (قلي).

مَقَالٌ (المَقَالِي), frying pan, pl مِقَالَةٌ (sl).

أَقْمَارٌ, the moon, pl الْقَمَرُ (قمر).

أَلْحُرُوفُ الْقَمَرِيَّةُ, the lunar letters (which do not assimilate with the *lâm* of أَل as in الْقَمَرُ).

أَقْمِشَةٌ, cloth, pl قُمَاشٌ (قمش).

قُمَصَانٌ, shirt, pl قَمِيصٌ (قمص).

قُمَامٌ, garbage, pl قُمَامَةٌ (قمام).

قَنَادِيلٌ, lamp, candle, pl قَنَدِيلٌ (قندل).

قَنَعَ قَنَاعَةً (i-a), to be content, be satisfied. (قنع).

القَاهِرَةُ, Cairo. (قهر).

قَهَقَهُ قَهَقَهُ قَهَقَهُ (rb), to guffaw.

قَهْوَةٌ, coffee.

قَادَ يَقُودُ قِيَادَةً (a-u), to lead, drive (a car).

قِيَادَةٌ, driving.

أَقْوَأَسُ، قِيسِيّ (masc/fem), bow, pl قَوْسٌ (قوس).

قَوْسٌ قَزَحٌ, rainbow.

قَاعَةٌ, hall, pl@.

قَالَ يَقُولُ قَوْلًا (a-u), to say, tell. (# قَائِلٌ & مَقُولٌ).

مَقَالٌ, article (in a magazine, journal), pl@.

قَامَ قِيَامًا (a-u), to get up.

قِيَامٌ, standing, pl قَائِمٌ.

أَقَامَ إِقَامَةً iv ① to raise, make someone get up. ② to

stay. ③ to say إِقَامَةً before the commencement of the

صَلَاة.

أَقَامَ هَذَا مَقَامَ ذَلِكَ, to put something in place of another.

مَقَامٌ (smki), place of standing. مَقَامُ إِبْرَاهِيمَ, the stone on which Ibrahim عَلَيْهِ السَّلَامُ stood while building the Ka'bah.

مَقَامٌ (smkiv), place of staying, abode.

تَقْوِيْمًا ii, to straighten.

تَقْوِيْمٌ (çii), shaping, shape.

اسْتَقَامَ اسْتِقَامَةً x, to be straight, to be right, proper, in order.

قَوْمٌ ① people, *pl* أَقْوَامٌ ② men (as in Q49:11).

أَقْوِيَاءُ, strong, *pl* قَوِيٌّ (قوي).

تَقْوِيَّةٌ ii, to strengthen, fortify, invigorate. (# مُقَوِّئٌ). Note: دَوَاءٌ مُقَوِّئٌ, invigorating medicine, tonic).

قَيْدٌ (قيد), record, register, entry, registry, enrollment, *pl* قِيُودٌ.

قَاسَ قِيَاسًا (قيس) (a-i), to measure; to draw analogy.

قِيَاسٌ (*gr*), analogy, e.g., the *pl* of دِينَارٌ should be دِنَانِيْرٌ according to قِيَاسٌ, but it is دَنَانِيْرٌ in contravention of قِيَاسٌ.

اسْتَقَالَ اسْتِقَالَةً (قيل) x, to resign, tender one's resignation.

## ك

(ك) ك (hj), like, e.g., هَذَا الْبَيْتُ كَالْقَصْرِ, this house is like a palace.

اَكْتُبْ كَمَا يَكْتُبُ الْمُدْرَسُ, as (followed by a verb), write as the teacher writes.

تَكَأْكَأَ تَكَأْكَؤًا (كأأ), to gather, crowd around.

كَأَنَّ هَذَا الْوَالِدَ أَخُو, as if, it seems, e.g., كَأَنَّ هَذَا الْوَالِدَ أَخُو بِلَالٍ, this boy seems to be Bilal's brother. كَأَنَّكَ مُسْتَعْجَلٌ, you seem to be in a hurry.

كَبِرَ كَبِرًا (كبر), to advance in age.

كِبَرٌ, old age.

كَبِيرٌ, big, large; old, pl كِبَارٌ.

كَبَّرَ تَكْبِيرًا ii, to say 'Allahu akbar'.

اسْتَكْبَرَ اسْتِكْبَارًا x, to be proud and haughty.

كَتَبَ كِتَابَةً (كتب), to write.

كُتُبٌ, book, pl كِتَابٌ.

كُتَيْبٌ, booklet, pl@.

مَكْتَبٌ ① desk ② office, *pl*\* مَكَاتِبُ.

مَكْتَبَةٌ, library, *pl*@.

الصَّلَاةُ الْمَكْتُوبَةُ, the five prescribed prayers.

كَثُرَ كَثْرَةً (كثُر) to be many, to be numerous.

كَثِيرٌ, many, numerous.

كَثَّرَ تَكْثِيرًا ii, to increase, multiply.

تَكْثِيرٌ (*gr*), action effecting many, e.g., قَتَلَ,

to massacre (as compared to قَتَلَ, to kill) and فَتَّحَ

فَتَّحَ بَابًا, to open a lot of doors (as compared to فَتَّحَ بَابًا,

to open a door).

كَذَبَ كَذِبًا (كذب) (a-i), to tell a lie.

كَثُرَ كَثْرَةً (كثُر) (u-u), to be much, many, to

grow.

كَثِيرٌ much, many, *pl* كَثِيرُونَ, e.g., طُلَّابٌ كَثِيرٌ /

كَثِيرُونَ.

كَرَّرَ تَكَرُّرًا ii, to repeat. (& مُكَرَّرٌ).

تَكَرَّرٌ, repetition.

كُرْسِيٌّ chair, *pl* كُرْسِيُّ (كرس).

كُرْمٌ كَرَمًا، وَكَرَامَةٌ (كرم) (u-u), to be noble, generous, high-minded. (# كَرِيمٌ).

كَرَهُ كَرَاهَةً (كره) (i-a), to hate, detest.

كَرَّهَ الشَّيْءَ إِلَى فُلَانٍ تَكْرِيهًا ii, to make someone dislike something, e.g., كَرَّهَ إِلَيَّ هَذَا الْكِتَابُ اللُّغَةَ الْفَرَنْسِيَّةَ, this book made me dislike French.

أَكْرَاهَهُ iv, to compel.

كَرِيهٌ, unpleasant.

كُرَاتٌ كُرَّةٌ (كرو) ball, pl

كُرَّةُ السَّلَّةِ, basketball.

كُرَّةُ الْقَدَمِ, football.

كَسَبَ كَسْبًا (كسب) (a-i), to earn.

كَسَرَ كَسْرًا (كسر) ① to break. ② (gr) to pronounce a letter with a كَسْرَةٌ.

كَسْرَةٌ (gr), the vowel *i* as in *him*, and its sign (---), pl@.

كَسَّرَ تَكْسِيرًا ii, to break into pieces, smash.

جَمَعُ تَكْسِيرٍ (gr), broken plural.



كَفٌّ (fem), palm of the hand (including the fingers),  
pl أَكْفٌ.

كَفَّلَ كَفَالَةً (a-u), to take care of (an orphan etc.)  
(# كَافِلٌ).

كَفَى يَكْفِي كِفَايَةً (a-i), to be enough, suffice,  
(# كَافٍ), e.g., يَكْفِينِي مِائَةُ رِيَالٍ, hundred riyals will  
be sufficient for me.

اكتَفَى اكتِفَاءً viii, to content oneself, to be  
satisfied.

كِلْتَا مُضَافٌ مُثَنَّى (كِلَا) both, fem كِلْتَا (followed by a مُثَنَّى as  
مُضَافٌ, e.g., كِلَا الطَّالِبَيْنِ نَجَحَ, and إِلَيْهِ, both the students  
have passed, كِلْتَا ابْنَتَيْنِ تَدْرُسُ بِالْجَامِعَةِ, both the daughters are studying at the university.)

كِلَابٌ (كلب) dog, pl كِلَابٌ.

كُلٌّ (كلل) ① all, every, e.g., لِيَجْلِسْ كُلُّ طَالِبٍ فِي مَقْعَدِهِ, let every student sit in his seat.

② (tk), all, e.g., حَضَرَ الطُّلَّابُ كُلَّهُمْ, all the students were present.

كُلِّيَّاتٌ (كُلِّيَّة) faculty, pl كُلِّيَّاتٌ.



كُلِّيَّةُ الْآدَابِ, faculty of Arts.

كُلِّيَّةُ التِّجَارَةِ, faculty of commerce.

كُلِّيَّةُ الشَّرِيعَةِ, faculty of Islamic law.

كُلِّيَّةُ الطَّبِّ, faculty of medicine.

كُلِّيَّةُ الْهَنْدَسَةِ, faculty of engineering.

كَلَّمَ تَكْلِيمًا، وَكَلَامًا (كَلِمًا) ii, to speak, talk (to some one).

تَكَلَّمَ تَكَلَّمَ (# مُتَكَلَّمًا) v, to speak, talk.

مَتَكَلَّمًا (gr), first person (I, we).

كَلِمَاتٌ, word, phrase, pl كَلِمَةٌ.

كَمْ كِتَابًا عِنْدَكَ؟ ① how many?, كَمْ (كَم) how many books have you? (This is called كَمْ الْإِسْتِفْهَامِيَّةُ).

كَمْ كِتَابٍ (كُتِبَ، مِنْ كِتَابٍ) عِنْدَكَ! ② how many!, كَمْ كِتَابٍ عِنْدَكَ! how many books you have! (This is called كَمْ الْخَبَرِيَّةُ).

كَمَّلَ كَمَالًا (كَمَل) (a-u), to be or become complete. (# كَامِلًا).

أَكْمَامٌ, sleeve, pl كُمَّ (كَمَم).

[كَنَدَا], Canada. كَنَدِيّ, Canadian, *pl*.

كَنَسَ كَنَسًا (a-u), to sweep. (كنس)

مِكَانِسَةٌ (*sl*), broom, *pl* مَكَانِسُ.

كَهْرَبَاءُ (كهرب), electricity.

أَكْوَابُ (كوب), tumbler, glass, *pl*.

كَادَ يَكَادُ (i-a), to be about to do, to be on the point of doing, e.g., كِدْتُ أَخْرُجُ, I was about to go out. In Q2:20, يَكَادُ الْبَرْقُ يَخْطِفُ أَبْصَرَهُمْ, 'The lightning almost snatches away their sight'. لَا أَكَادُ أَرَى شَيْئًا, I can hardly see anything.

كَوَكَبُ (كوكب), star, *pl* كَوَاكِبُ.

كَانَ يَكُونُ كَوْنًا (a-u), to be. (*nq* verb)

When followed by a *mr* verb, it denotes a continuous or repeated action, e.g.,

كُنْتُ أَلْعَبُ كُرَةَ الْقَدَمِ فِي شَبَابِي, I used to play football in my youth.

أَمَّا كَيْنُ (مكان), place, *pl* أَمَّا كِنَةٌ, *pl* مَكَانٌ (*smk*).

كَوَّنَ تَكْوِينًا ii, to make, form. (مُكَوِّنٌ &).

(كوي) كَوَى كَيًّا (a-i), to iron. مِكْوَاةٌ, an iron.

[الْكُوَيْتُ], Kuwait.

(كي) كَيَّ (hn) (mostly with the التَّعْلِيلِ لامُ prefixed to it. The *mr* following it is مَنْصُوبٌ), in order to, so that, e.g., رَجَعْتُ إِلَى الْبَيْتِ لِكَيْ أُسْتَرِيحَ, I went home so that I may relax.

(كيد) كَادَ يَكِيدُ كَيْدًا (a-i), to deceive, plot.

أَكْيَاسٌ, sack, *pl* كَيْسٌ (كيس).

كَيْفَ (كيف), how.

مُكَيِّفٌ (#ii), air-conditioner, *pl@*.

كَأَيْلٌ (#) & كَالٌ يَكِيلُ كَيْلًا (كيل) (a-i), to measure. (مَكِيلٌ).

مِكْيَالٌ, measure (like pint, gallon, litre etc.), *pl*

مَكَايِيلٌ.

كَيْلَةٌ (çh), mode of measuring.

[كَيْلُوغَرَامٌ], kilogram, *pl@*.

# ل

ل (لام), the letter *lâm*.

لِ (lj), for, belonging to, e.g., هَذَا الْقَلَمُ لِبِلَالٍ, this pen is Bilal's. لِلَّهِ الْمَشْرِقُ وَالْمَغْرِبُ, the east and the west belong to Allah.

لِمَنْ, whose, e.g., لِمَنْ هَذَا الْكِتَابُ؟, whose book is this?

لِمَ, why, e.g., لِمَ لَمْ تَأْتِ أَمْسَ؟ 'Why did you not come yesterday?' In pausal mode لِمَهُ.

لِمَاذَا, why.

لِامُّ الْاِبْتِداءِ, a *lâm* prefixed to the مُبْتَدَأُ for emphasis, e.g., وَلَا جَزَاءُ الْآخِرَةِ أَكْبَرُ (Q16:41), 'And surely the reward of the Hereafter is greater.'

لِالْمُزْحَلَقَةِ, see under زَحَلَقَ.

لِامُّ التَّعْلِيلِ, a *lâm* signifying purpose prefixed to *mr* verb, e.g., قُمْتُ لِأَخْرَجَ, 'I got up to go out.' The *mr*

following it is مَنْصُوبٌ due to أَنْ which is usually omitted, but may also be mentioned.

لام الأمر, a *jâzim lâm* denoting *amr* prefixed to the *mr* of the third or first person, e.g., لِيَجْلِسَ كُلُّ طَالِبٍ فِي مَقْعَدِهِ, let every student sit down in their seat.

لِنَذْهَبَ إِلَى الْمَطْعَمِ, let us go to the dining hall.

جَاءَ بِلَالٌ لَا كَمَالٌ, Bilal, not Kamal, came. نَادِ عَبَّاساً لَا حَامِداً, call Abbas, not Hamid.

لَا أَكَلْتُ وَلَا شَرِبْتُ, neither...nor, e.g., لَا ... لَا, neither ate nor drank.

بَلَّغْنِي أَنَّهُ مَاتَ. (with *md*) expresses a wish, e.g., لَا كَانَ الْخَبْرُ صَاحِحاً, I hear that he is dead. How I wish this information is not correct.

لَبَّيْكَ (لبب), at your service! (said by a pilgrim proceeding to Makkah to perform *hajj* or '*umrah*'; also said in reply to a call).

لَبِثَ لَبِثاً (لبث), to remain, stay, tarry.

لَبِسَ لُبْساً (لبس), to wear, put on (dress).

لُبُوسٌ, dress, clothes, *pl* لُبُوسٌ.

أَبْسَةٌ, dress, clothes, *pl* لِبَاسٌ

أَبَانٌ, milk, *pl* لَبَنٌ (لَبْن)

لِتْرٌ, litre, *pl@* (لِتر)

الَّتِي (fem/mb), who, which (relative pronoun), (لِتي)

الطَّالِبَةُ الَّتِي تَعْرِفُ, اللاتِي، اللاتِي، *pl* اللَّتَانِ *dual*

الأَلْمَانِيَّةُ بِنْتُ المُؤَدِّبَةِ, the female student who knows

German is the headmistress' daughter. لِمَنِ السَّيَّارَةُ الَّتِي

وَقَفَتْ أَمَامَ المَسْجِدِ؟, whose is the car which stopped in front of the mosque?

لاَحِظْ مُلَاحَظَةً (لِحِظ)

لَحَظَاتٌ, moment, *pl@* (لِحَظَاتٌ)

لَحِقَ بِالشَّيْءِ لُحُوقًا (لِحِق) (i-a), to become attached.

التَّحَقَّقَ بِالجَامِعَةِ التَّحَاقًا viii, to join (school, university etc.).

لُحُومٌ, flesh, meat, *pl* لَحْمٌ (لِحم)

لِحَى، لُحَى، beard, *pl* لِحِيَّةٌ (لِحي)

لَدَغَ لَدَغًا (لِدغ) (a-a), to bite (of a snake).

لَدَى (with pronouns لَدَيْـ), at, by. ????

(أَلَذُّ) delicious. (لَذِيذٌ (لَذِذٌ)

(الَّذِي) (masc/mb), who, which (relative pronoun), dual الَّذِينَ, pl الَّذِينَ (mb), e.g., الرَّجُلُ الَّذِي كَلَّمْتُهُ الْآنَ صَدِيقُ أَبِي my father's friend.

(لَزِمَ) (i-a), to be necessary, be required.

الَّتَزَمَ التِّزَامَ viii, to embrace.

مُلَّتَزَمٌ (smkviii), part of the eastern wall of the Ka'bah between the door and the Black Stone which is held as though in embrace.

(لُصٌّ) thief, pl لُصُوصٌ.

(لَعِبَ) (i-a), to play.

مَلْعَبٌ, playground, pl مَلَاعِبٌ.

(لَعَلَّ) (sis/inna) ❶ it is hoped, e.g., لَعَلَّكَ بِخَيْرٍ, I hope you are well. (This is called التَّرَجِّي). ❷ it is feared, e.g., لَعَلَّهُ مَرِيضٌ, I am afraid he is sick. (This is called الإِشْفَاقُ).

(لَعَقَ) (i-a), to lick.

مِلْعَقَةٌ (sl), spoon, pl مَلَاعِقُ

لَعْنَةٌ (لعن), curse.

لُغَةٌ (لغو), language, pl@

أَلْتَفَتَ التَّفَاتَا (لفت) viii, to turn around.

أَلْفَظَ (لفظ) word, pl أَلْفَظٌ

تَلَفَّظَ (تلفظ) v, to pronounce.

أَلْقَابٌ (لقب), nick-name; title, pl أَلْقَابٌ

لَقِيتُ حَامِدًا فِي (لقي) (i-a), to meet, e.g.,

أَنَا مَسْرُورٌ بِلِقَائِكَ، وَالْمَسْجِدِ، I met Hamid in the mosque.

I am glad to meet you.

وَالِىَ اللِّقَاءِ، goodbye, au revoir.

أَلْقَى إِقَاءً (لقى) iv, to cast, throw.

لَاقَى يُلَاقِي مُلَاقَاةً (لاقي) iii, to meet.

تَلَقَّى تَلْقِيًا (تلقي) v, to receive (a letter, etc.).

التَّقَى (التقى) viii, to meet, e.g.,

الصَّدِيقَانِ بَعْدَ سَنَوَاتٍ، the two friends met after years.



التقاء الساكنين (*gr*) coming together of two vowelless letters which is not permissible, e.g., لَمْ تَقُولُ where both و and ل are vowelless, and to avoid this و is omitted (لَمْ تَقُلْ).

اسْتَلَقَى عَلَى قَفَاهُ اسْتِلقاءً x, to lie down on one's back.

بِلَالٍ غَنِيٌّ لَكِنَّ أُخْتَهُ فقيرةٌ (لكن) <sup>1</sup> (*sis/inna*), but, e.g., Bilal is rich but his sister is poor.

لَكِنَّ is a 'lightened' form لَكِنَّ and has the same meaning, but does not render the following noun *mançûb*, and may also be used with a verbal sentence, e.g.,

حَامِدٌ نَائِمٌ وَلَكِنَّ زَمِيلَهُ يَقْظَانُ, Hamid is sleeping, but his classmate is awake.

رَأَيْتُهُ وَلَكِنَّ مَا كَلَّمْتُهُ, I saw him, but did not speak to him.

لَمَسَ لَمْسًا (لمس) (a-i/u), to touch.

---

<sup>1</sup> Pronounced لاكن.

(لَمَّا) (a-u), to collect together (what is scattered). In Q89:19, وَتَأْكُلُونَ الْتَرَاتِ أَكْلًا لَّمًّا, 'And you devour the inheritance indiscriminately, adding what does not belongs to you to what belongs to you.'

(لَمْ) negative particle used with the *mudâri'*. It turns the *mudâri'* into *mâdi*, and renders it *majzûm*, e.g., أَذْهَبُ, I go. → لَمْ أَذْهَبُ, I did not go.

(لَمَّا الْجَزْمَةُ) ❶ negative particle meaning 'not yet' used with the *mudâri'*. It turns the *mudâri'* into *mâdi*, and renders it *majzûm*, e.g., أَكْتُبُ, 'I write.' → لَمَّا أَكْتُبُ, 'I have not yet written.' The verb may be dropped after it, e.g., أَجَاءَ الْمُدِيرُ؟ -- لَمَّا, 'Has the headmaster come?' – 'Not yet.'

(لَمَّا الْحِينِيَّةُ) ❷ used with the *mâdi* meaning 'when', e.g., لَمَّا انْتَهَى الدَّرْسُ ذَهَبْتُ إِلَى الْمَطْعَمِ, 'When the lesson finished, I went to dining hall.'

لَنْ (لن), negative particle used with the *mudâri'*. It restricts the *mudâri'* to future, and renders it *mançûb*, e.g., أَذْهَبُ, I go. → لَنْ أَذْهَبَ, I will not go.

[لَنْدُنُ], London.

لَهَبٌ (لهب), flame. أَبُو لَهَبٍ, *kunya* of 'Abd al-'Uzzâ ibn 'Abd al-Muttalib, an uncle of the Prophet.

لَهَا يَلْهُو لَهْوًا (لهو), (a-u), to amuse oneself, kill time.

لَوْ (لو), introduces a hypothetical condition. The affirmative *jawâb* takes a *lâm*, e.g., لَوْ سَمِعْتَ قِصَّتَهُ, had you heard his story, you would have cried.

وَلَوْ (ولو), even if, e.g., لَا تَشْتَرِ هَذِهِ السَّيَّارَةَ وَلَوْ كَانَتْ رَخِيصَةً, do not buy this car even if it is cheap.

لَوْلَا (لولا), had it not been for ..., but for, e.g., لَوْلَا مُسَاعَدَتُكَ, but for your help, I would not have learnt Arabic.

لَوْ مَا (لوما), same as لَوْلَا.

لَوْحَةٌ (لوح), chart, poster, *pl* لَوْحَاتٌ.

لَوَائِحٌ (لوائح), rules and regulations, *pl* لَوَائِحٌ.

(لوطٌ عليه السلام) (لوط), the prophet Lût (Lot).

(لومٌ) (لامٌ يَلُومُ لَوْمًا) (a-u), to blame, censure. (# لاِئِمٌ & مَلُومٌ).

(لونٌ) (لوانٌ) colour, pl

(لونٌ) (لونٌ) ii, to colour. (& مَلُونٌ. Note: صورةٌ مَلَوْنَةٌ, colour photo, colour picture).

(لويسٌ), Louis (proper name).

(ليسَ) is not (sis/k) Its *khavar* may take —, e.g., لَسْتُ مَرِيضًا / لَسْتُ بِمَرِيضٍ, I am not sick.

(أليسَ كذلك؟) Isn't it so?

(ليتَ) (sis/inna introduced to express a wish which is either impossible or very difficult to achieve), I wish I were ..., e.g., لَيْتَنِي مَلَكٌ, I wish I were an angel. لَيْتَ لَنَا مَلْيُونَ دُولَارٍ, I wish we had a million dollar.

(ليثٌ) lion, pl لِيُوثٌ

(ليلٌ) night, nighttime (as opposed to نَهَارٌ, daytime), pl لَيَالٍ (اللَّيَالِي)

لَيْلَ نَهَارَ (mb), day and night.

لَانَ يَلِينُ لِينًا (لين) (a-i), to be or become soft, tender,  
gentle (# لَيْنٌ, \$ أَلَيْنٌ).

## م

(مَا) النَّافِيَةُ، the negative *mâ*, e.g., مَا فَهَمْتُ، I did not understand. مَا لِي أَخٌ، I have no brother.

مَا الْحِجَازِيَّةُ، neegative *mâ* which is used in a nominal sentence, and renders its *khavar* مَنْصُوبٌ، e.g., مَا هَذَا

بَشَرًا (Q12:31), 'This is not a human being.' The *khavar* may also take a *bâ' zâ'idaḥ* which renders it

مَجْرُورٌ، e.g., وَمَا اللَّهُ بِغَافِلٍ عَمَّا تَعْمَلُونَ (Q2:74), 'And Allah is not unaware of what you do.' The particle

*mâ* which does not render its *khavar* مَنْصُوبٌ is known as مَا التَّمِيمِيَّةُ، e.g., مَا أَنَا مَرِيضٌ.

مَا الاسْتِفْهَامِيَّةُ، interrogative *mâ* meaning 'what', e.g.,

مَا هَذَا؟، 'what is this?' Also مَاذَا، e.g., مَاذَا أَكَلْتَ؟، 'what did you eat?'

مَا، some, a certain, e.g., لِأَمْرِ مَا، for some reason، فِي

مَا، on a certain day، وَأَعْطِنِي كِتَابًا مَا، give me some book.

اقْرَأْ كَمَا يَقْرَأُ, *mâ* denoting a *مَصْدَرٌ*, e.g., مَا الْمَصْدَرِيَّةُ  
 الْمُدْرَسُ, 'read as the teacher does.' Here كَمَا يَقْرَأُ  
 الْمُدْرَسُ means كَقِرَاءَةِ الْمُدْرَسِ which is *مَصْدَرٌ*.  
 مَا الْمَصْدَرِيَّةُ الظَّرْفِيَّةُ, *mâ* denoting both a *مَصْدَرٌ* and a  
 ظَرْفٌ, and meaning 'as long as', e.g., سَيَبْقَى  
 الْإِسْلَامُ مَا بَقِيَ الْعَالَمُ, 'Islam will last as long as the  
 world lasts.' Here مَا بَقِيَ الْعَالَمُ has the sense of مُدَّةَ بَقَاءِ  
 الْعَالَمِ, 'the period of the lasting of the world' which  
 combines the ظَرْفٌ and the *مَصْدَرٌ*.  
 مَا أَعْجَبَ، *mâ* denoting wonder, e.g., مَا التَّعْجُوبَةُ  
 النُّجُومِ، how beautiful the stars are!  
 لَا أَعْرِفُ مَا كَتَبْتَ، the relative *mâ*, e.g., مَا الْمَوْصُولَةُ  
 I do not know what you wrote.  
 مَا تَشْرَبُ أَشْرَبُ، the conditional *mâ*, e.g., مَا الشَّرْطِيَّةُ  
 whatever you drink, I will drink (the same).  
 مَا لَكَ؟، what is the matter with you?, what is wrong  
 with you?  
 [مَالِيَا]، Malaysia.

مِئَاتٌ <sup>pl</sup> مِئَاتٌ (مَائِي), one hundred, *pl* مِئَاتٌ.

ثَلَاثُمِائَةٍ, three hundred.

أَرْبَعُمِائَةٍ, four hundred.

خَمْسُمِائَةٍ, five hundred.

سِتِّمِائَةٍ, six hundred.

سَبْعُمِائَةٍ, seven hundred.

ثَمَانِمِائَةٍ, eight hundred.

تِسْعُمِائَةٍ, nine hundred.

[مَاء], *see* موه.

[مَال] *see* مول.

أَمْتَارٌ <sup>pl</sup> مِئَاتٌ (مِئَاتٌ), meter *pl* مِئَاتٌ.

مُمْتِعٌ (#iv), enjoyable, pleasant.

مَتَى نَذْهَبُ (interrogative), when, e.g., مَتَى (متي) ①

'When shall we go to the market?' ②

مَتَى تُسَافِرُ أُسَافِرُ مَعَكَ, (conditional), whenever, e.g.,

whenever you travel, I will travel with you.

أَمْثَالٌ <sup>pl</sup> مِئَاتٌ (مِئَاتٌ), example, *pl* مِئَاتٌ.



و ② (gr), verb with *و* or *ي* as the first radical. See *مُعْتَلٌ* under *علل*.  
① example, *pl* *أَمْثَلَةٌ*, *مثالٌ*.

*مِثَالِيٌّ*, exemplary, ideal.

*مِثِيلٌ*, similar, match, equal.

[*مُجْتَهِدٌ*], hard-working, diligent, industrious, *pl*.

*مُجْتَهِدُونَ*. See *جهد*.

[*مَجَلَّةٌ*], magazine, journal, *pl@*. See *جلل*.

*مَجَّانًا* (مجن), free. e.g., *خُذْ هَذَا مَجَّانًا*, take this free.

[*مِحْرَابٌ*] see *حرب*.

[*مِحْطَةٌ*] see *حطط*.

viii, to examine. *امْتَحَنَ امْتِحَانًا* (محن).

*امْتِحَانٌ* (çviii), examination, *pl@*.

(#viii), examiner, *pl~*. *مُتَّجِنٌ*.

(a-u), to erase. *مَحَا يَمْحُو مَحْوًا* (محو).

*مِمْحَاةٌ*, eraser.

[*مِخْدَةٌ*], pillow, *pl* *مِخْدَةٌ*. See *خدد*.

(a-a), to praise. *مَدَحَ مَدْحًا* (مدح).

مَدَّ مَدًّا (a-u), to extend.

أَمَدَّ بِكَذَا إِمْدَادًا iv, to provide.

مُدَّةٌ, period of time, *pl* مُدَدٌ.

أَلِفٌ see الألفُ الممدودةُ.

مُدُنٌ, city, *pl* مَدِينَةٌ (مدن).

المَدِينَةُ المُنَوَّرَةُ, Madinah (*literally*, the Illuminated City).

رِجَالٌ, man, *pl* (المَرءُ) امرؤٌ (مرء).

نِسَاءٌ\* *pl* (with *al* المَرأةُ) ① woman. ② wife, امرأةٌ.

مِرَايَا, mirror, *pl* مِرآةٌ. See رأي.

مَرَّ عَلَيْهِ مُرُورًا (a-u), to pass.

مِرَارٌ, once, *pl* مَرَّةٌ.

رَأَيْتُهُ مَرَّةً, I saw him once.

كَلَّمْتُهُ مَرَّتَيْنِ, I spoke to him twice.

زَارَنِي مَرَّاتٍ / مِرَارًا, He visited me many a time.

مُرُورٌ, traffic.

اسْتَمَرَ اسْتِمْرَارًا x, to last, continue.

(مرض) مَرَضَ مَرَضًا (i-a), to fall ill, be taken ill.

مَرَضِيٌّ, sick, fem مَرِيضَةٌ, pl.\* مَرَضِيٌّ.

مَرَضَ تَمْرِيضًا ii, to nurse. (& مُمَرِّضٌ, male nurse, pl~, fem مُمَرِّضَةٌ, pl@).

تَمَارَضَ تَمَارُضًا vi, to feign sickness.

مَرَّنَ تَمْرِينًا ii, to exercise.

تَمْرِينٌ, exercise, pl@.

مَزَجَ الشَّيْءَ بِالمَاءِ مَزْجًا (مزج) (a-u), to mix.

مَعْدِيكْرِبُ (gr), a compound word like مَعْدِيكْرِبُ wherein both the words have been mixed together, and the second element is neither a *mudâf ilaihi*, nor a *na't*, nor a *khobar*.

(مَزَّقَ) مَزَّقَ مَزْجًا ii, to tear to pieces. (مَزَّقَ).

مَزَايَا, merit, advantage, pl مَزِيَّةٌ (مزي).

مَسَحَ بِالرَّأْسِ مَسْحًا (مسح) (a-a), to wipe it with wet hands.

مَسَدٌ, palm fibre. (مسد).

مَسَّ مَسًّا (i-a مَسَّ), to touch. (مسس).

(إِمْسَاكٌ) (çiv), constipation.

[مِسْكِينٌ] see سكن.

(مَسَاءٌ) (مسو), evening.

أَمْسَى iv ① (sis/k) to become in the evening, e.g.,  
أَمْسَى الْمَرِيضُ ضَعِيفًا , the patient became weak in the  
evening. ② (ft) to spend the evening, enter in the  
evening, e.g., لَمَّا أَمْسَى اللَّصُّ هَرَبَ , when it was  
evening, the thief escaped.

(مَشَطٌ) (a-u/a-i), to comb.

أَمْشَاطٌ, comb, pl مُشَطٌّ.

(مَشَى) (a-i), to walk.

(الْمَاشِي) ماشٍ, pedestrian, one walking (not riding),  
pl مُشَاةٌ.

لا تَمْشِ مِشِيَةً (çh), gait, way of walking, e.g.,

وَالْمَرَضَى , don't walk like the sick.

مَوَاشٍ (الْمَوَاشِي) ماشية, cattle, livestock, pl

(مِصْرُ) (!), Egypt.

(مضمض) مَضَمَضَ الْمَاءَ فِي فَمِهِ مَضْمُضَةً (rb), to move water in the mouth while washing it.

تَمَضَمَضَ تَمَضْمُضًا (rbii), to wash the mouth.

(مضي) مَضَى مُضِيًّا (a-i), to depart, leave, go away.

جِئْتُ الشَّهْرَ الْمَاضِيَّ / الْأُسْبُوعَ (#), past. (الماضي)

الْمَاضِيَّ, I came last month/last week.

الْفِعْلُ الْمَاضِي (gr), verb in the past tense.

مَطَايَا، riding animal, pl مَطِيَّةٌ (مطو)

سَأَخْرُجُ مَعَكَ (zz), with, e.g., I will go out

with you, دَرَسْنَا مَعَ أُخْتِكَ play with your sister,

مَعًا we studied together.

هُوَ قَوِيٌّ مَعَ أَنَّهُ كَبِيرُ السِّنِّ، even though, e.g., he is strong even though he is old.

عَجْمٌ [مُعْجَمٌ], dictionary, pl مَعَاجِمُ. See

مَغَصٌ، وَمَغَصٌ، gripes, colic. (مغص)

غُلُقٌ [مُغْلَقٌ], closed. See

مَكَثَ مَكَثًا (a-u), to remain, stay. (مكث)

مَكَّةُ (مكك), Makkah.

يُمْكِنُنِي أَنْ iv, to be possible. (مَكْن)  
أُخْرِجُ, I can go out. وَأَيُّمِكُنِكَ أَنْ تَأْتِيَنِي غَدًا, can you  
come to me tomorrow? (# مُمَكِنٌ).

تَمَكَّنَ مِنَ الشَّيْءِ تَمَكُّنًا v, to be able, to manage,  
e.g., تَمَكَّنَ اللَّصُّ مِنَ الْهَرَبِ, the thief managed to  
escape.

[مِكْوَاةٌ], iron (ironing device). See كَوَى.

مَلَأْتُ بَيْتِي (مَلَأَ) (a-a), to fill, e.g.,  
كُتِبًا, I filled my house with books. (# مَالِيٌّ & مَمْلُوءٌ).

مَلَأَ (!), full, fem مَلَأَى, pl\* مَلَأَةٌ.

مِلٌّ, quantity which fills something, e.g., مِلٌّ يَدٍ,  
handful, مِلٌّ فَمٍّ, mouthful.

أَمْتَلَأَ viii (mt of i), to be filled up, to be  
full.

أَمْلَاءٌ, council of elders (of a king), pl مَلَأَةٌ.

أَمْلَاحٌ (مِلْحٌ) (fem/masc), salt, pl مِلْحٌ.

أَمْلَقَ iv, to become poor. (مَلَقٌ)

مَلَائِكَةٌ, angel, pl مَلَكٌ.

مُلُوكٌ, king, pl مَلِكٌ.

مَمَالِكٌ, kingdom, pl مَمْلَكَةٌ.

أَمَلَى عَلَى فُلَانٍ يُمَلِّي إِمْلَاءً (مَلُو) iv, to dictate.

مَلَائِيْنٌ, million, pl [مَلْيُونٌ].

مَنْ أَنْتَ؟, who are you? (mb) مَنْ (من)

مَنْ لَا يَرْحَمُ لَا, the conditional *man*, e.g., مَنْ الشَّرْطِيَّةُ

وَيُرْحَمُ, he who does not pity, will not be pitied.

أَيْنَ مَنْ يُرِيدُ أَنْ, the relative *man*, e.g., مَنْ الْمَوْصُولَةُ

وَيُقَابِلُنِي, where is the one who wants to meet me?

وَهَمْزَةُ الْوَصْلِ (من) مِنْ (hj), from. (when followed by

the ن takes فَتْحَةٌ, e.g., مِنَ الْمَسْجِدِ. With the pronoun

of the first person singular the ن has *šaddah*, e.g.,

مِنِّي).

مِنْ الزَّائِدَةُ, the word مِنْ used with a نَكْرَةٌ in a sentence containing negation, prohibition or interrogation. It signifies emphasis, e.g., مَا جَاءَ مِنْ أَحَدٍ, no one

has come. لا يَخْرُجُ مِنْ أَحَدٍ, no one should leave.

هَلْ مِنْ خَبَرٍ?, any news?

مِمَّ, from what (for مَا مِمَّ).

مِمَّنَّ, from whom (for مَنْ مِمَّنَّ)

[مَنَارَةٌ], minaret, pl مَنَائِرُ. See نور.

[مِنْبَرٌ] see نَبْر.

[مِنْدِيلٌ], handkerchief, pl مَنَادِيلُ. See ندل.

ما رَأَيْتُهُ مُنْذُ شَهْرٍ, since, e.g., (hj) مُنْذُ (منذ) (منذ) I have not seen him since a month.

(منع) منعاً (a-a) ① to prevent, hold back. ② (gr), to deprive a noun from the *çarf* (*tanwîn*). Such a noun is called مَمْنُوعٌ مِنَ الصَّرْفِ.

لا مَانِعَ مِنْ, objection, anything that prevents. لا مَانِعَ مِنْ, there is nothing to prevent that, it can be done, there is no objection.

مَمْنُوعٌ مِنَ الصَّرْفِ (gr) same as غَيْرُ مُنْصَرَفٍ. See under صرف.

امْتَنَعَ امْتِنَاعاً viii (mt of i), to be prevented, to refrain, abstain, cease.



لَوْلَا حَرْفُ امْتِنَاعٍ لِوُجُودٍ, the name of the particle لَوْلَا which denotes that an action has been prevented from taking place due to the existence of another action or element, e.g., لَوْلَا الْهَوَاءُ لَهَلَكَ النَّاسُ, 'but for air, people would have perished'. Here, people were 'prevented' from perishing due to the 'existence' of air.

تَمَنَّى تَمَنَّى (مني) v, to wish, desire.

هَجَعَ [مَهَجَعٌ] see

مَهَلَّ مَهَلَّ (a-a), to do something leisurely, not to be in a hurry.

مَهْلًا, slowly, please!

مَهْمَا (as), whatever, whatsoever, e.g., مَهْمَا

يَكُنْ تَمَنُّ هَذَا الْكِتَابِ أَشْتَرِهِ, whatever be the cost of this book, I will buy it.

مُهَنْدِسٌ [مُهَنْدِسٌ], engineer, pl~. See هَنْدَسَ

مَاتَ يَمُوتُ مَوْتًا (a-u), to die.

مَيِّتٌ, dead, pl مَوْتَى. Also مَيِّتٌ, pl أمواتٌ

مَوْتٌ, death.

مَوْزَةٌ (sjj), bananas, sing مَوْزٌ

[مُوسَى], razor, *pl* (المَوَاسِي) . See وسي .

[مُوشٌ], Muş (a town in Turkey).

أَمْوَالٌ, wealth, *pl* مَالٌ (مَوْلٌ)

مِيَاهٌ, water, *pl* مَاءٌ (مَوْه)

(امتَّازَ #viii مُمْتَازٌ (مِيزٌ)), outstanding, excellent, one who has passed with distinction (in examination).

مَيَّزَ تَمْيِيزاً ii, to distinguish, separate, select.

تَمْيِيزٌ (*gr*), a *mançûb* noun used to specify and define an indeterminate idea contained in the previous word or the whole sentence, e.g., عِنْدِي مِترٌ , I have a meter of silk. وَأَنْتَ أَحْسَنُ مِنِّي خَطًّا , you are better than I in handwriting.

[مِيكَائِيلُ], angel Mîkâ'îl (Michael).

مَالَ إِلَى الشَّيْءِ مَيْلًا (مِيلٌ) (a-i), to incline, to be favourably disposed. See Q4:129, فَلَا تَمِيلُوا كُلَّ

الْمَيْلِ , 'Do not completely incline (towards one of the wives).'

أَمْيَالٌ, mile, *pl* مِيلٌ

## ن

أَنْبَاءٌ, news, *pl* نَبَأٌ (نَبَأٌ)

سُورَةُ النَّبَأِ, name of the 78<sup>th</sup> *sûrah*.

أَنْبِيَاءٌ, prophet, *pl* نَبِيٍّ

الْمُتَنَبِّئِ (more correctly الْمُتَنَبِّئِ, 'one falsely claiming to be prophet'), nickname of the famous Arabic poet أَبُو طَيْبٍ (915 - 965 CE).

نَبَاتٌ, growth; plant, vegetation.

نَبَتَ نَبْتًا (a-u), to grow (*especially* of trees).

أَنْبَتَ إِنْبَاتًا iv, to make (the plant etc.) grow.

مَنْابِرٌ, pulpit (in a mosque), *pl* مِنْبَرٌ (نَبْرٌ)

تَنَابَرُوا بِالْأَلْقَابِ تَنَابُزًا (نَبَزٌ) vi, to call each other names.

نَبَّهَ لِلشَّيْءِ تَنْبِيهًا (نَبِهٌ) ii, to draw someone's attention to, to notify.

نَتَائِجٌ, result, *pl* نَتِيجَةٌ (نَتَجٌ)

اسْتَنْثَرَ اسْتِنْثَارًا (نثر) x (fq), to clean the nose during the *wudû* by inhaling water, then exhaling it with force.

نَجَحَ نَجَاحًا (نجح) (a-a), to be successful; pass (the examination).

نَجَاحٌ, success.

مَنَاجِلُ (منجل) (sl), sickle, pl

نُجُومٌ (نجم) star, pl

نَجَا يَنْجُو نَجَاةً (نجو) (# نَجِ), escape, be saved.

مَنْجُوٌّ & (الناجي).

نَجَّى يُنَجِّي تَنْجِيَةً ii, to save.

أَنْجَى يُنَجِّي إِنجَاءً iv, to save.

أَنْحَاءٌ, e.g., grammar. ② side, part, pl

نَحْوٌ ③, in all parts of the world. ③

الكَلِمَةُ ثَلَاثَةٌ أَقْسَامٌ: الْاسْمُ نَحْوُ: بَيْتٍ, such as, e.g.,

وَالْفِعْلُ نَحْوُ قَالَ, وَالْحَرْفُ نَحْوُ مِنْ

of speech: noun as بَيْتٍ, verb as قَالَ, particle as مِنْ.

نَخْلَةٌ (نخل) (sjj), date palms, sing

(نَدَب) *gr*, *نُدْبَةٌ* (gr), word used to express pain. It is made up of *وَ* followed by the name of the member of the body, and, finally, by *أَهْ* -, e.g., *وَ رَأْسَاهُ* to express pain in the head, *وَ بَطْنَاهُ* to express pain in the stomach.

(نَدْر) *(a-u)*, *نَدَرَ نُدُورًا* (ندر), to be rare.

*يُحَذَفُ نُدُورًا*, it is rarely omitted.

*مَنَادِيلٌ* *pl* *مِنْدِيلٌ* (ندل), handkerchief, *pl*.

(نَدِم) *(i-a)*, *نَدِمَ عَلَى الْأَمْرِ نَدَامَةً* (ندم), to regret, repent.

*نَدَّمَ فُلَانًا تَنْدِيمًا* ii, to make someone regret.

(نَدِم) *gr*, the particle *هَلَّا* followed by the verb in the *mâdî*, e.g., *هَلَّا أَنْتَظَرْتَنِي*, shouldn't you have waited for me?

(نَدَو) *iii*, *نَادَى يُنَادِي نِدَاءً* (ندو), to call, call out.

*يَا بِلَالُ، يَا نِدَاءً* (gr), phrase used to call someone like *يَا بِلَالُ، يَا نِدَاءً*.  
*عَبْدَ اللَّهِ*.

(نَدَو) *gr*, the particle *يَا* as in *يَا بِلَالُ*. Here *بِلَالُ* is called *مُنَادَى*.

نَوَادٍ (النَّوَادِي) club, *pl* , نَادٍ (النَّادِي)  
 (مُنْذِرٌ #) iv, to warn. أَنْذَرَ إِذْذَارًا (نذر)  
 نَزَعَ نَزْعًا (a-i), to draw forth, pull out. (نزع)  
 نَزَلَ نُزُولًا (a-i), to descend, come down. (نزل)  
 نَزَّلَ تَنْزِيلًا ii, to bring down, send down.  
 فِي التَّنْزِيلِ in the Qur'an.  
 أَنْزَلَ إِزَالًا iv, to bring down, send down.  
 تَنْزَّلَ تَنْزُلًا v, to come down gradually.  
 تَنْزَهُ تَنْزُهُا (نزه) v, to go for a walk.  
 نَسَبٌ (gr) adjective formed from a noun by  
 suffixing the letter يّ, e.g., دِينِي (religious) from  
 دِينٌ (religion). Such an adjective is called اسْمٌ مِّنْسُوبٌ  
 نَسَبَةٌ, relation, ratio. نَسَبَةٌ مِئْوِيَّةٌ  
 percentage.  
 مَنَاسِبٌ (# iii), suitable.  
 نُسَخٌ copy (of a book), *pl* نُسْخَةٌ (نسخ)  
 نَاسِخٌ, typist, *pl* نُسَاخٌ.

امرأة<sup>٢٨</sup> *sing* , نِسْوَةٌ , نِسَاءٌ (نِسْو)

& نَاسٍ (النَّاسِي) (#) , نَسِيَ نَسِيَانًا (نَسِي)  
(مَنَسِي).

iv, to cause to forget. اُنْسَى اِنْسَاءً

(a-a) , نَشَأَ نُشُوَاءً , وَنَشَأَةٌ (نَشَأ)

iv, to compose, write. اُنْشَأَ يُنْشِئُ اِنْشَاءً

give هَاتِ مِثْلًا مِنْ اِنْشَائِكَ , composition, writing. وَاِنْشَاءً  
an example of your own (i.e., not a quotation).

to saw (wood). ① (a-u) نَشَرَ نَشْرًا (نَشَرَ) to spread. ②

viii (mt of i ②), to be spread, اُنْتَشَرَ اِنْتِشَارًا  
be scattered.

سaw, pl مَنَاشِيرُ , مَنَشَارٌ

news bulletin. نَشْرَةٌ , اَلْاَخْبَارِ

activity, pl اُنْشِطَةٌ , نَشَاطٌ (نَشِط)

active, energetic, pl نَشِيطٌ , نَشِيطٌ

(gr) , نَصَبٌ (نَصَب) one of the three states of a noun  
or *mr* verb in which they take فَتْحَةٌ as the primary  
ending, e.g., اُرِيدُ اَنْ اَحْفَظَ الْقُرْآنَ

نَصْبٌ (gr), a noun or *mr* verb in the state of نَصْبٌ.

نَصَبَ الْكَلِمَةَ نَصْبًا (a-i), to render a word *mançûb*.

نَاصِبٌ, a word that renders another word *mançûb*, *pl*

نَوَاصِبٌ.

نَصَحَ فُلَانًا، وَ لِفُلَانٍ نُصَحًا، وَ نَصِيحَةً (نصح) (a-a), to advise, counsel.

نَصَرَ نَصْرًا (نصر) (a-u), to help, support.

أَنْتَصَرَ أَنْتِصَارًا viii, to be victorious.

نَصْرَانِيٌّ، Christian, *pl* نَصَارَى.

نَصَّ عَلَى الشَّيْءِ نَصًّا (نصص) (a-u), to stipulate, lay down.

نَصْفُ سَاعَةٍ، half, نَصْفٌ نَصْفًا (نصف) (a-u), half an hour, *pl*

أَنْصَافٌ.

مُنْتَصَفُ اللَّيْلِ (sz/smkviii), middle. مُنْتَصَفٌ

مُنْتَصَفُ الطَّرِيقِ، halfway.

أَمْتِحَانٌ نِصْفِيٌّ، half-yearly examination.

نَطَقَ نَطْقًا (a-i), to utter, pronounce, speak.



هَذَا الْكِتَابُ لِغَيْرِ النَّاطِقُونَ بِالْعَرَبِيَّةِ, speakers of Arabic.  
النَّاطِقِينَ بِالْعَرَبِيَّةِ, this book is meant for the non-  
speakers of Arabic.  
نُطْقٌ, pronunciation.

(نَظَرَ) نَظَرَ إِلَيْهِ نَظْرًا (a-u), to look at.

أَنْتَظِرُ أَنْتِظَارًا viii, to wait.

نَظَّارَةٌ, spectacles, *pl@*.

(نَظَّفَ) نَظَّفَ, clean.

نَظَّفَ تَنْظِيفًا ii, to clean.

(نَظَّمَ) بِأَنْتِظَامٍ, regularly.

(نَعْتٌ) نَعْتٌ (gr), adjective, *pl* نَعُوتٌ.

هَذَا بَيْتٌ نَعْتٌ, e.g., (gr), noun qualified by the نَعْتٌ, 'this is a beautiful house'. Here بَيْتٌ is نَعْتٌ, and نَعْتٌ is بَيْتٌ.

(نَعَسَ) نَعَسَ نَعَاسًا (a-a/u), to feel drowsy.

نَعَسَانٌ, drowsy, *fem* نَعَسَى, *pl\** نَعَاسٌ.

(نَعَلَ) نَعَلَ (fem), sandal, *pl* نَعَالٌ.

(نَعَم) نَعَم, yes.

نَعْمَةٌ, blessing, favour, grace, *pl* نَعَمٌ.

نَعِيمٌ, comfort, amenities, happiness.

نَعَمٌ, livestock (camels, cattle, sheep and goats), *pl*

أَنْعَامٌ.

(نَغْمٌ) تَنْغِيمٌ (çii), intonation, voice modulation.

(نَفَدٌ) نَفِدَ نَفَاداً (i-a), to be exhausted, be used up, come to end.

نَوَافِدٌ, window, *pl* نَوَافِذٌ (نَفَذٌ).

نُفُوسٌ، أَنْفُسٌ, soul, life, *pl* نَفْسٌ (نَفْسٌ).

طَابَ نَفْساً, to be cheerful.

نَفْسُهُ (tk), himself, e.g., الإِمَامُ نَفْسُهُ جَاءَ, the imam

himself came. سَأَلْتُ الْمُدِيرَ نَفْسَهُ, I asked the director

himself. اتَّصَلْتُ بِالْوَزِيرِ نَفْسِهِ, I contacted the minister

himself. أَنَا نَفْسِي لَمْ أَفْهَمْ هَذَا, I myself did not

understand this. (This may be used with بِ also, أَنْتَ

قُلْتَ لِي هَذَا بِنَفْسِكَ, you yourself told me this. In plural only أَنْفُسٌ is used).

أَنْفَاسٌ, breath, *pl* أَنْفُسٌ.

تَنَفَّسَ تَنَفُّسًا v, to breathe.

مُتَنَفِّسٌ (*smkv*), breathing space, place where can breathe fresh air.

نَافَقَ مُنَافَقَةً، وَنِفَاقًا (نَفَقَ) (# مُنَافِقٌ).

أَنْفَقَ إِنْفَاقًا iv, to spend (money).

نَفَى يَنْفِي نَفْيًا (نَفِي) ① reject, disallow. ② (*gr*), to negate. (# نَافٍ (النَّافِي) & مَنْفِي).

نَفْيٌ (*gr*), negation, a sentence with a negative particle.

مَا النَّافِيَةُ (*gr*), the negative *mâ* as in مَا شَرِبْتُ, I did not drink.

لَا النَّافِيَةُ, the negative *lâ* as in لَا تَشْرَبُ, you do not drink.

لَا النَّاهِيَةُ, the prohibitive *lâ* as in لَا تَشْرَبْ, do not drink.

مَنْفِي (gr), negative (x مُثَبَّتٌ, positive).

نُقُودٌ, cash, money, pl نُقْدٌ (نقد).

① (gr) فِعْلٌ نَاقِصٌ (نقص) verb with و or ي as the third radical such as دَعَا، بَكَى. The verb with و as the third radical is called النَّاقِصُ الْوَاوِيُّ، and the one with ي is called النَّاقِصُ الْيَائِيُّ. ② verb which does not take فَاعِلٌ, but takes instead اسْمٌ and خَبَرٌ such as كَانَ.

مَنْقُوصٌ (gr), noun ending in an original ي such as الدَّاعِي، النَّادِي.

نَقَلَ نَقْلًا (a-u), to move something from its place, transport, transfer, remove.

انْتَقَلَ انْتِقَالًا viii (mt of i), to shift, move.

نَقَّى تَنْقِيَةً (نقو) ii, to cleanse, purify.

مَنَاكِبٌ, shoulder, pl مَنَكِبٌ (نكب).

نَكَحَ نِكَاحًا (a-a), to marry (a girl).

أَنْكَحَ إِنْكَاحًا iv, to give (a girl) in marriage.

(نكرة) (gr), indefinite noun, *pl@*.

النَّكْرَةُ الْمَقْصُودَةُ بِالنِّدَاءِ, an indefinite noun specified by the caller, e.g., يَا وَلَدُ, O boy, يَا رَجُلُ, O man. (Such a noun is *mb*).

النَّكْرَةُ غَيْرُ الْمَقْصُودَةِ بِالنِّدَاءِ, an indefinite noun not specified by the caller, e.g., يَا رَجُلًا خُذْ بِيَدِي, 'some one, hold my hand' said by a blind caller. Such a noun is *منصوب*.

ii (gr), to make a noun indefinite.

(مَنْكُرٌ) (&iv) (*šr*), acts prohibited by the Divine Law (as opposed to *المعروف*).

أَنْكَالٌ, fetter, *pl* نَكَالٌ (نكل).

نَمْرُودٌ, Nimrod (ancient king).

نَمْلَةٌ (*sjj*), ant, *sing* (نمل).

أَنْمَلَةٌ, one of the three divisions of the finger; fingertip, *pl* أَنْمَالٌ.

نَمَّامٌ (talebearer), نَمِيمَةٌ (نمم).

مَنْهَجٌ, syllabus, curriculum, *pl* مَنْهَجٌ (نهج).

نَهَرَ نَهْرًا (نهر) (a-a), to rebuff, chide, talk harshly.

أَنْهَارٌ, river, *pl* نَهْرٌ.

نَهَارٌ, daytime, day (from dawn to dusk).

لَيْلَ نَهَارٍ (*mb*), day and night.

أَنْتَهَزَ الْفُرْصَةَ أَنْتَهَازًا (نهز) viii, to seize the opportunity, avail oneself of the opportunity.

نَهَى يَنْهَى نَهْيًا (نهي) (a-a), to prohibit.

لَا تَجْلِسْ هُنَا (gr), a negative command, e.g., لا تَجْلِسْ هُنَا, don't sit here. لَا يَجْلِسُ أَحَدٌ هُنَا, let no one sit here. (= no one should sit here.)

أَنْتَهَى أَنْتَهَاءً viii, to finish, end, come to a close.

مُنْتَهَى (!!), end, the last, utmost point.

مُنْتَهَى الْجُمُوعِ (*gr*), broken plural on the patterns of مَفَاعِلُ and مَفَاعِيلُ and similar patterns (also called الْمُتَنَاهِي).

الْأَمْتِحَانُ النَّهَائِيُّ, final examination. نِهَائِيَّةٌ, end.

نَابَ عَنْ فُلَانٍ نِيَابَةً (نوب) (a-u), to deputize, act on someone's behalf.

نَائِبٌ فَاعِلٍ (gr), subject of a verbal sentence with the verb in the passive voice, e.g., قُتِلَ الرَّجُلُ.

نُوحٌ عَلَيْهِ السَّلَامُ (نوح) the prophet Nûh (Noah).

أَنْوَارٌ light, pl نُورٌ (نور)

نَوَّرَ تَنْوِيرًا ii, to illuminate. (& مُنَوَّرٌ, illuminated).

نِيرَانٌ fire, pl نَارٌ.

مَنَائِرٌ lighthouse, minaret, pl مَنَارَةٌ.

نَاسٌ people. (نوس)

أَنْوَاعٌ kind, type, pl نَوْعٌ (نوع)

نُوقٌ she-camel, pl نَاقَةٌ (نوق)

تَنَاوَلَ تَنَاوُلًا (نول) vi, to take with the hand, to take (food/drink/medicine). (مَتَنَاوَلَ smk).

فِي مَتَنَاوَلِ الْيَدِ, within reach.

نَامَ يَنَامُ نَوْمًا (نوم) (i-a) to sleep. (نَيَامٌ, pl نَائِمٌ #).

نَوَّمَ تَنْوِيماً ii, to put to sleep, to induce sleep.

دَوَاءٌ مُنَوِّمٌ, sleep-inducing medicament.

تَنَآوَمَ تَنَآوِماً vi, to feign sleep.

النُّونُ (نون) (*fem*), the letter ن.

نَوَّنَ الاسْمَ تَنْوِيناً ii, to pronounce the last letter of a noun with the sound of ن as يَدٌ، يَدًا، يَدِ (yad-u-n/ yad-a-n/ yad-i-n).

نُونُ الْوَقَايَةِ (*gr*), the protective *nûn*, a *nûn* inserted between the verb and the ي of the first person to protect the last letter of the verb from being مَكْسُورٌ because of the following ي, e.g., يَسْأَلُنِي which, without the *nûn*, will become يَسْأَلِي thus losing its رَفْعُ ending.

Certain particles also take this *nûn*.

نُونُ النَّسْوَةِ, the attached pronoun ن denoting 'they' and 'you' (*fem*) as in دَخَلْنَ، يَدْخُلْنَ، تَدْخُلْنَ.

نَوَى نِيَّةً (نوي) (a-i), to intend doing something.

نَوَاةٌ (*sjj*), date stones, fruit kernels, *sing*.



أَنِّيَابٌ، نُيُوبٌ *pl* نَابٌ (نَيْبٌ)

[نَيْجِيرِيَا], Nigeria.

[نَيْسٌ], Nice (in France).

نَالٌ يَنَالُ نَيْلًا (نَيْلٌ) (i-a), to attain, achieve, get;  
to harm.

[نِيُو يُوْرِكُ], New York.



هَاءُ (هَاءُ), name of the letter ه.

هَاءُ التَّنْبِيهِ, *hâ* used to call the listener's attention. It is prefixed to some of the *أَسْمَاءُ الْإِشَارَةِ* such as هَذَا، هَؤُلَاءِ، هَهُنَا. It is also prefixed to pronouns as in هَاهُوَذَا، هَاأَنْدَا، here I am.

هَا، attached pronoun meaning *her* as in رَأَيْتَهَا، I saw her, كِتَابُهَا، her book.

هُ، attached pronoun meaning *him/his* as in رَأَيْتُهُ، I saw him, كِتَابُهُ، his book.

هَاءُ السَّكْتِ (*gr*), a *sâkin* ه suffixed to certain short words in the pausal mode, e.g., لِمَ for لِمَ.

هَاءُ (sf), take!, pl هَاؤُمْ، fem هَاءُ، pl هَاؤُنَّ.

هَاتِي، هَاتِيْنَ، fem هَاتِي، هَاتُوا، pl [هَاتِ]. (This word is used only in *amr*. No other derivative is used).

هَبَطَ (a-i), هَبَطَ هُبُوطًا (هَبَطَ), to descend.

مَهْبِطُ الْوَحْيِ, place of descending. مَهْبِطُ (smk), land where revelation came to the Prophet صَلَّى اللهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ, i.e., Madinah.

هُبَلُ (!), name of a pre-Islamic deity in Arabia.

هُوَآتِفُ, telephone, pl هَوَاتِفُ (هتف).

هُجَرَ, to emigrate. iii هَاجَرَ مُهَاجِرَةً (هجر).

مُهَاجِرٌ (smk), place where one migrates to.

هُجِعَ, to sleep at night. (a-a) هَجَعَ هُجُوعًا (هجع).

كَانُوا قَلِيلًا مِنَ اللَّيْلِ مَا يَهْجَعُونَ, 'They used to sleep but little of the night.'

مُهَاجِعٌ, hostel, pl مَهَاجِعُ.

هُدُوءٌ, calmness, quietness. (هدء)

بِهُدُوءٍ, calmly, quietly.

هُدًى, to guide (# هَادٍ), هُدًى يَهْدِي هُدًى: هُدًى, وَهُدَايَةً (هدي).

مُهَدِّدٌ & هُدَاةٌ, pl (الهادي).

هُدًى, guidance.

اهْتَدَى اهْتِدَاءٌ viii (*mt* of *i*), to be guided, to find guidance. (# (مُهْتَدٍ (المُهْتَدِي)).

استَهْدَى استِهْدَاءٌ x, to seek guidance.

هَدَايَا هَدِيَّةٌ, present, gift, *pl*.

هَرَوَلَ هَرَوَلَةً (هَرَوْل) (*rb*), to walk fast.

هَزَمَ هَزِيمَةً (هَزَم) (*a-i*), to defeat (an army).

انْهَزَمَ انْهِزَامًا viii, to be defeated.

هَفَوَاتٌ (هَفَوَاتٌ) هَفْوَةٌ, lapse, slip, small mistake, *pl@*.

هَلْ, interrogative particle.

هَلَّا ❶ (followed by *md*) signifies that the action contained in the sentence should have been done, e.g., هَلَّا أَنْتَظَرْتَنِي, shouldn't you waited for me? (In this sense it is called حَرْفُ التَّنْدِيمِ, i.e., particle that makes the فَاعِلٌ feel sorry). ❷ (followed by *mr*) it goads on the فَاعِلٌ to do the action contained in the sentence, هَلَّا تَجْتَهِدُ, do strive. (In this sense it is called حَرْفُ التَّحْضِيضِ, particle of encouragement).

(هَلَكَ هَلَاكًا) (a-i), to perish, die.

(مُهْلِكٌ) (#), to destroy. (أَهْلَكَ إِهْلَاكًا).

(هَلَالٌ) (هَلَلٌ), crescent, new moon, pl أَهْلَاءٌ.

(هَمْزَةٌ) (هَمْزٌ), the letter (ء).

(هَمْزَةُ الْقَطْعِ), initial *hamzaḥ* which is pronounced irrespective of the word being preceded by another word or not, e.g., أَنْتَ، أَنَا وَأَنْتَ.

(هَمْزَةُ الْوَصْلِ), initial *hamzaḥ* pronounced only when the word is not preceded by another word, e.g., أَقْرَأُ

أَقْرَأُ وَأَكْتُبُ، — أَكْتُبُ.

(مَهْمُوزٌ), a verb with هَمْزَةٌ as one of its radicals. If the هَمْزَةٌ is the first radical, it is called مَهْمُوزُ الْفَاءِ like أَكَلَ. If it is the second radical, the verb is called مَهْمُوزُ الْعَيْنِ like سَأَلَ, and if it is the third radical, it is called مَهْمُوزُ اللَّامِ like قَرَأَ.

(هَمٌّ) (#), (هَامٌ), e.g., (هَمَّ الْأَمْرُ فَلَانَا هَمًّا) (هَمَمٌ), لَا يَهْمُنِي هَذَا الْأَمْرُ, this matter does not concern me/worry me.

(أَهْمٌ \$) important, هَامٌ

(# مُهْمٌ) iv, to concern, worry. أَهَمَّ الْأَمْرُ فُلَانًا إِهْمَامًا

viii, to pay attention. اهْتَمَّ بِالْأَمْرِ اهْتِمَامًا

هُنَا, here. هُنَاكَ, there. (هَنَا)

ii, to congratulate. هَنَّاهُ بِالْأَمْرِ تَهْنِئَةً (هَنَا)

هِنْدِي Indian, pl هُنُودٌ. Note

India. الهِنْدُ (هِنْدُ) Red Indians. الهِنُودُ الْحُمْرُ

Hindi (language). الهِنْدِيَّةُ

هندسة, engineering. It is the *maçdar* of هندس, to do engineering work (# مُهَنْدِسٌ, engineer, pl~).

هُنَّ pl هي fem هُمْ they, pl هُوَ he, it, هو (هو) to refer only to عَاقِلٌ nouns, i.e., human beings).

هُنِيْهَةً, a little while. (هِنُو)

هُوِيَ هُوِيًّا (a-i), to fall, swoop down. (هَوِي)

أَهْوِيَّةٌ, air, pl هَوَاءٌ

هَيْئَةً, position, situation, mode, organization, pl@. (هِيء)

## و

(و) ❶ and, e.g., جَاءَ بِلَالٌ وَحَامِدٌ Bilal and Hamid came. ❷ while, e.g., خَرَخَ أَخِي وَأَنَا نَائِمٌ my brother left while I was sleeping. ❸ by, e.g., وَاللَّهِ لَقَدْ سَمِعْتُهُ by Allah! I heard him saying this. (It this sense it is a *hj*).

وَا as in وَرَأْسَاهُ! see نُذْبَةٌ.

[وَأَشِينُنُ], Wahington (city).

(وِثِقَ يَوثِقُ وَوُثِقًا، وَثِقَةً) (i-i), to trust, have confidence.

وِثْقَةٌ, confidence.

(وَجِبَ يَجِبُ وَجُوبًا) (a-i), to be obligatory. يَجِبُ وَعَلَيْهِ أَنْ يَرْجِعَ غَدًا, he should return tomorrow.

وَأَجِبَاتُ, duties, homework (of a student).

❶ iv أَوْجَبَ يُوجِبُ إِجْبَابًا enjoin, make something obligatory. ❷ (*gr*) affirmation which is the opposite of اسْتَفْهَامٌ and نَهْيٌ، نَفْيٌ, i.e., negation,

prohibition and interrogation. A statement free from these three elements is called مُوجِبٌ.

(وَجِيزٌ) short, concise.

أَوْجَاعٌ pain ache, *pl*

تَوَجَّعَ تَوَجُّعًا v, to suffer pain.

وَجْنَةٌ cheek (*esp.* the raised part), *pl@*  
(وَجَنَاتٌ).

وُجُوهُ face, *pl*

وَجَّهَ تَوَجَّهًا ii, to address (a question, request etc.).

مُوجِّهٌ inspector (in schools), *pl~*.

تَوَجَّهَ تَوَجُّهًا v, to turn one's face to, to go towards.

أَتَجَّهَ أَتْجَاهًا viii, to turn one's face.

تُجَاهَ, in front of, facing, e.g., أَأَجْلِسُ تُجَاهَكَ؟, may I sit facing you?

مِنْ جِهَةٍ كَذَا, direction, *pl@*. جِهَةٌ, with respect to.

لِي ابْنٌ وَاحِدٌ وَبِنْتُ, e.g., وَاحِدَةٌ, one, *fem* (وَاحِدٌ) (وَاحِدَةٌ), I have only one son and one daughter.



أَحَدَ عَشَرَ, eleven, *fem* إِحْدَى عَشْرَةَ e.g.,  
مُسْلِمًا، وَإِحْدَى عَشْرَةَ مُسْلِمَةً.

الطَّالِبُ, eleventh, *fem* حَادِيَةَ عَشْرَةَ e.g.,  
الحَادِي عَشَرَ، الطَّالِبَةُ الحَادِيَةَ عَشْرَةَ.

أَتَّحَدُ أَتَّحَادًا viii, to unite (become one).

(وَدِدْتُ) (a-i) وَدَّ يُوَدُّ وَدًّا، وَمَوَدَّةٌ (ودد)  
want, e.g., وَدِدْتُ أَنْ أُسَافِرَ مَعَكَ غَيْرَ أَنَّنِي مَرِيضٌ, I would  
like to travel with you, but I am sick.

ii, to bid farewell, say  
goodbye. (# مُوَدِّعٌ, one bidding farewell).

حَجَّةُ الْوَدَاعِ, the Farewell Pilgrimage of the Prophet  
صَلَّى اللهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ.

(وَدَعَ يَدَعُ) (a-a), to leave. (Only the *mudâri'* and the  
*amr* (دَعُ) of this verb are used).

أَوْدِيَةٌ, valley, *pl* وَادٍ (الوَادِي) (ودي).

(وَذَرَ يَذَرُ) (i-a), to leave. (Only the *mudâri'* and  
the *amr* (ذَرُ) of this verb are used).

(i-i), to inherit. وَرِثَ يَرِثُ وِرَاثَةً (ورث)

وَرِثَةٌ (#), heir, *pl* وَاَرِثَ

وَتَرَاثَ, inheritance.

(a-i), to come, appear, show up, وَرَدَ يَرِدُ وُرُودًا (ورد)

تَرَدُّ هَذِهِ الْكَلِمَةُ فِي الدَّرْسِ ثَلَاثَ هَذِهِ قَائِمَةٌ, this word occurs thrice in the lesson. مَرَّاتٍ

الْكَلِمَاتِ الْجَدِيدَةِ الْوَارِدَةِ فِي هَذَا الدَّرْسِ, this is the list of the new words occurring in this lesson.

leaf (of a tree). ❶ وِرْقٌ (ورق) ❷ paper, *pl*\*

أَوْرَاقٌ.

وَرَقَةٌ, a piece or sheet of paper.

وَزَرَءٌ *pl*, minister (political), وَزِيرٌ (وزر)

ii, to distribute. وَزَعَ تَوَزِيْعًا (وزع)

(a-i), to weigh. وَزَنَ يَزِنُ وِزْنًا، وِزْنَةٌ (وزن)

مَوَازِينُ *pl*, balance, scales, مِيزَانٌ

dirty. وَسِخٌ (وسخ)

v, to be or come in the middle. تَوَسَّطَ تَوَسُّطًا (وسط)

المَدْرَسَةُ الْمُتَوَسِّطَةُ (#v), middle. مُتَوَسِّطٌ, middle school.

ثَلَاثِيٌّ سَاكِنُ الْوَسَطِ (gr), a three-letter word with the middle letter being vowelless like هِنْدٌ.

وَسْطَى (!), middle finger.

وَسَمَّ يَسِمُ وَسَمًا، وَسِمَةً (وسم) (a-i), to brand.

وَسْوَسَ وَسْوَسَةً (وسوس) (rb) to whisper, make evil suggestions.

أَوْسَى رَأْسَهُ (وسي) (masc/fem), razor. (If *masc* it is (!!), and if *fem*, it is (!)).

أَوْشَكَ (وشك) (sis/k), to be on the point (of doing something), e.g., أَوْشَكَ الدَّرْسُ أَنْ يَنْتَهِيَ, the lesson is about to finish.

وَصَفَ يَصِفُ وَصْفًا، وَصِفَةً (وصف) (a-i), to describe.

صِفَةٌ ① quality. ② (gr), adjective, pl@.

مُسْتَوْصَفٌ, clinic, pl@.

وَصَلَ يَصِلُ وَصُولًا (وصل) (a-i), to arrive.

وَصَلَ يَصِلُ وَصَلًا وَصِلَةً (a-i), to connect.

وَصَلَ الرَّحِمَ (a-i), to maintain good relation with the relatives.

اتَّصَلَ بِكَذَا اتِّصَالًا viii, to contact, to be connected, be attached.

ضَمِيرٌ مُتَّصِلٌ (gr), the attached form of the pronoun like تَ in دَخَلَتْ (as opposed to أَنْتَ), and like كَ in نَعْبُدُكَ (as opposed to إِيَّاكَ نَعْبُدُ).

اسْتِثْنَاءٌ (gr), a type of اسْتِثْنَاءٌ in which the مُسْتَثْنَى مِنْهُ and the مُسْتَثْنَى belong to the same category, e.g., أُحِبُّ الْفَوَاحِيَّ كُلَّهَا إِلَّا التَّفَاحَ, I like all fruits except the apple.

الَّذِي، الَّذِينَ، (gr), relative pronoun like اسْمٌ مَوْصُولٌ, e.g., وَالْبَيْتُ الَّذِي خَلْفَ الْمَسْجِدِ لِلْإِمَامِ، وَالتِّي، اللَّائِي، ما 'the house which is behind the mosque is the imam's.' The phrase which completes the meaning of the الاسْمُ الْمَوْصُولُ (in this example خَلْفَ الْمَسْجِدِ) is called صِلَةُ الْمَوْصُولِ.

اتِّصَالَ (gr), to use the attached form of the pronoun as in إِيَّاكَ نَعْبُدُ.

(وَضَأَ) <sup>١٤</sup> وُضُوءٌ, *wudû'*, ritual washing of certain parts of the body prior to performing certain acts of worship.

تَوَضَّأَ تَوَضُّؤًا v, to perform *wudû'*.

مُتَوَضَّأٌ (*smkv*), place for performing *wudû'*.

(وَضَحَ يَضْحُ وَضُوحًا) (a-i), to become clear. (#  
(وَاضِحٌ).

وَضَّحَ تَوْضِيحًا ii, to make clear, explain.

وَضَّحَ = وَضَّحَ يَتَضَّحُ

(وَضَعَ يَضَعُ وَضْعًا) (a-a), to place.

مَوَاضِعُ, subject, subject-matter, *pl@*, مَوَاضِعُ.

(وَطَأَ يَطَأُ وَطْئًا) (i-a), to tread, trample.

وَطَّأَ تَوَطُّؤًا ii, to pave the way, prepare.

المُوطَّأُ (&ii), name of the *hadith* collection by Imam Malik (*literally*, a paved way, an easy access [to the study of *hadith*]).

وَاطَّبَ مُوَاطَّبَةً (وَظَبَ) iii, to be regular, attend regularly.

(وَعَدَ يَعِدُ وَعْدًا، وَعِدَّةٌ) (a-i), to promise.

مَوَاعِدُ, appointment, appointed time, *pl* مَوَاعِدُ.

وَعَضَّ يَعِظُ وَعِظًا، وَعِظَةٌ (وعظ) to exhort, admonish.

وَفُودٌ, delegation, *pl* وَفُودٌ (وفد).

ii, وَفَّقَ اللهُ الْعَبْدَ تَوْفِيقًا (وفق) to lead someone to success. (& مُوَفَّقٌ).

viii, اتَّفَقَ اتِّفَاقًا to agree.

(&viii), مُتَّفَقٌ عَلَيْهِ, a *hadith* reported by both al-Bukhari and Muslim in their *Ḥahîh* collections.

(a-i), وَفَى يَفِي وَفَاءً (وفي) to be perfect, complete. (#

الوَافِي) وَافٍ, full, complete, ample, abundant).

v (passive), تُوَفِّيَ to die (*literally*, to be taken completely). (& مَتَّوَفَّى, deceased).

وَفَاةٌ, death, *pl@* (وَفَاةٌ).

أَوْقَاتٌ, time, *pl* أَوْقَاتٌ (وقت).

(a-a), وَقَعَ يَقَعُ وَقُوعًا (وقع) to fall down, come to pass, happen, be located, be situated.

v, تَوَقَّعَ تَوْقَعًا (غَيْرُ مُتَّوَقَّعٍ) to expect. (& مُتَّوَقَّعٌ, expected,

مُتَّوَقَّعٌ, unexpected).

وَقَفَ يَقِفُ وَقُوفًا (وقف) (a-i), to stand, stop.

وَقَّفَ تَوْقِيفًا ii, to stop.

تَوَقَّفَ تَوْقُفًا v, to stop, come to a standstill.

وَقَى يَقِي وَقَايَةً (وقى) (a-i), to guard, protect. (Takes

two objects, e.g. وَقِنَا عَذَابَ النَّارِ (Q2:201), 'And save us from the punishment of the fire.'

اَتَّقَى اتَّقَاءً viii (for اَوْتَقَى ❶) to be mindful of

Allah, to be pious. اَتَّقَى بِكَذَا ❷, to take shelter.

تَقْوَى, piety, god-consciousness, righteousness.

وَكَّدَ تَوَكِيدًا (وكد) ii, to emphasize. (gr) to emphasize

the meaning by using words like كُلُّ, نَفْسٌ etc., e.g.,

أَكَلْتُ الدَّجَاجَةَ كُلَّهَا, I ate the chicken completely,

زَارَنِي الْمُدِيرُ نَفْسُهُ, the director himself visited me.

(Note that أَكَّدَ تَأْكِيدًا is also used in this sense.)

تَوَكَّلَ عَلَى اللَّهِ تَوَكُّلاً (وكل) v, to rely, trust, put one's

trust in.

وَلَجَّ يَلِجُ وَلُوجًا (ولج) (a-i), to enter.

وَلَدَ يَلِدُ وِلَادَةً (ولد) (a-i), to bear (a child), give birth (#  
(مَوْلُودٌ & وَاِلِدٌ).

وَلِدٌ, birth (of Christ). لِّلْمِيلَادِ ١٩٥٦ عَامَ, in 1956  
C.E.

وُلِدْتُ عَامَ ١٩٣٣ م, I was  
born in 1933 CE. أَيْنَ وُلِدْتَ؟, where were you born?

وَلَدٌ ① boy ② offspring (used to denote singular,  
plural, masculine and feminine), *pl\** أَوْلَادٌ.

وَلِيَ الشَّيْءَ يَلِيهِ وَيَا (ولي) (i-i), to administer,  
govern, to be close, to come next, to follow, e.g.,  
عِنْدَنَا الْآنَ مُحَاضَرَةٌ، يَلِيهَا بَرْنَامُجٌ مَّسَابِقَةُ الْقُرْآنِ  
الْكَرِيمِ, we now have a lecture, and this will be  
followed by the Quranic quiz programme.

مَا يَلِي، the following, what follows.

وَالٍ (الْوَالِي), ruler, governor, *pl* وُلَاةٌ.

أَوْلَى (\$)، more deserving, better suited, more  
adequate.

وَلِيٌّ، friend, supporter, *pl* أَوْلِيَاءٌ.

تَوَلَّى v, to turn away.



تَوَالِيًا *vi*, to follow in succession.

تَوَالِي الْأَمْثَالِ (*gr*), two or more identical consonants or vowels following each other in close succession. Arabic does not like this phonetic phenomenon, and usually drops of the identical speech sounds.

وَلَايَاتُ, state, *pl* وَلَايَةٌ.

الْوَلَايَاتُ الْمُتَّحِدَةُ الْأَمْرِيكِيَّةُ, United States of America.

[وَلِيْمٌ], William.

وَهَبَ لَهُ الشَّيْءَ يَهَبُ وَهْبًا، وَهَبَةً (وهب) to give, grant, donate. (وَهَّابٌ, one who grants excessively).

وَهَنَ يَهِنُ وَهْنًا (وهن) (a-i), to be weak.

وَاهِنٌ (#), weak. (أَوْهَنُ \$).

وَيْلٌ (ويل) affliction, woe.

## ي

(يَاءُ) (يَاءُ) (fem), the letter ي.

يَاءُ الْمُخَاطَبَةِ, the attached pronoun ي denoting

'you' (fem) as in تَشْرَبِينَ and اشْرَبِي.

[اليابان], Japan. يَا بَانِي, Japanese, pl~.

أَيْتَامٌ، يَتَامَى orphan, pl يَتِيمٌ (يَتِيم).

(الْأَيْدِي) أَيَادٍ pl+ (الْأَيْدِي) أَيَدٍ pl, hand, يَدٌ (يَدِي) meaning 'favours').

بَيْنَ يَدَيْهِ, in front of him (lit. 'between his hands').

يَسِّرٌ تَيْسِيرًا (يسر) ii, to facilitate, make easy.

يُسْرٌ, prosperity, affluence, ease.

يَسَارٌ, left (opposite of right).

الجَانِبُ الْإَيْسَرُ, left side.

أَيْقَظَ فُلَانًا يُوقِظُ إِيقَظًا (يقظ) iv, to wake someone up.

اسْتَيْقَظَ اسْتَيْقَظًا x (mt of i) to wake up, e.g.,

اسْتَيْقَظْتُ ثُمَّ أَيْقَظْتُ أُخِي, I woke up, then I woke my brother up.

(يَقِينُ) يَقِينٌ, certainty, certitude.

(يَمِينُ) يَمِينٌ, right (hand) (*fem*), *pl* أَيْمَانٌ.

الجَانِبُ الأَيْمَنُ, right side.

الْيَدُ الأَيْمَنُ, right hand.

[أَيُوغُوسْلَافِيَا], Yugoslavia.

(يَهُودٌ) يَهُودِيٌّ (*sjj*), Jews, *sing* يَهُودِيٌّ.

(يَوْمٌ) يَوْمٌ, day, daytime, *pl* أَيَّامٌ.

وَيَوْمُ السَّبْتِ, Saturday.

وَيَوْمُ الأَحَدِ, Sunday.

وَيَوْمُ الأَثْنَيْنِ, Monday.

وَيَوْمُ الأَثْنَاءِ, Tuesday.

وَيَوْمُ الأَرْبَعَاءِ, Wednesday.

وَيَوْمُ الأَخْمِيسِ, Thursday.

وَيَوْمُ الأَجْمَعَةِ, Friday.

وَالْيَوْمُ, today.

[أَيُونَانُ], Greece.

كَانَ الْفَرَاغُ مِنْهُ بُعِيدَ صَلَاةِ الْعَصْرِ يَوْمَ الْجُمُعَةِ السَّابِعِ وَالْعِشْرِينَ  
مِنْ جُمَادَى الْأُولَى عَامَ ١٤٢٧ هـ الْمَوَافِقِ الثَّلَاثِ وَالْعِشْرِينَ مِنْ  
حَزِيرَانَ (يُونِيُو) عَامَ ٢٠٠٦ مِ بَدَارِي الْكَائِنَةِ بِمَدِينَةِ الْمِصْطَفَى  
صَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَيْهِ وَسَلَّمَ. وَالْحَمْدُ لِلَّهِ الَّذِي بِنِعْمَتِهِ تَمَّ  
الصَّالِحَاتُ، وَصَلَّى اللَّهُ عَلَى نَبِيِّنَا مُحَمَّدٍ وَعَلَى آلِهِ وَصَحْبِهِ وَسَلَّمَ  
تَسْلِيمًا كَثِيرًا.

# Arabic Language Books

By Dr. V. Abdur Rahim

## Durusul Lughatul Arabiyya Arabic Reader

This is a 3-volume series designed to teach Arabic language to those whose mother tongue is not Arabic. Direct method of teaching Arabic is adopted by the author who has been in the teaching faculty for well over three decades.

### Part I

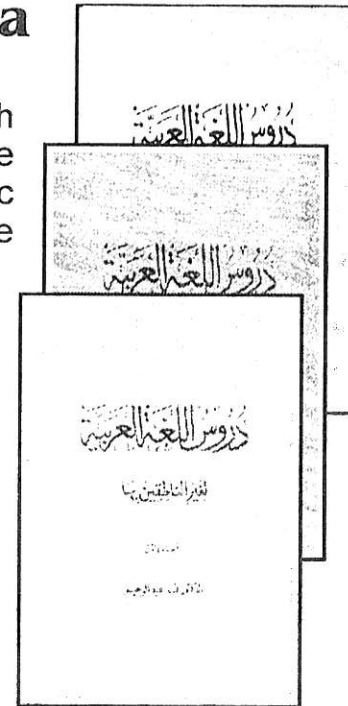
IRs 35.00 ISBN 81 232 0020 X

### Part II

IRs 65.00 ISBN 81 232 0023 4

### Part III

IRs 80.00 ISBN 81 232 0053 6



## Key To Durusul Lughatul Arabiyya English

Durusul Lughatul Arabiyya series is supplemented with respective keys, in English. These 'keys' serve as an appetizer for the thirsty learner. This 3 volume series opens the gateway to learning and understanding the language of the Quran.

### Part 1

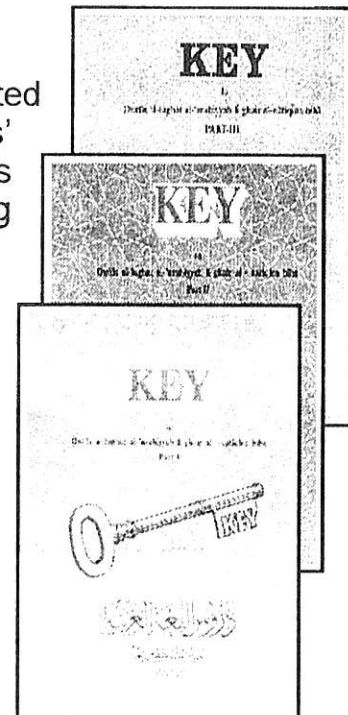
IRs 20.00 ISBN 81 232 0112 5

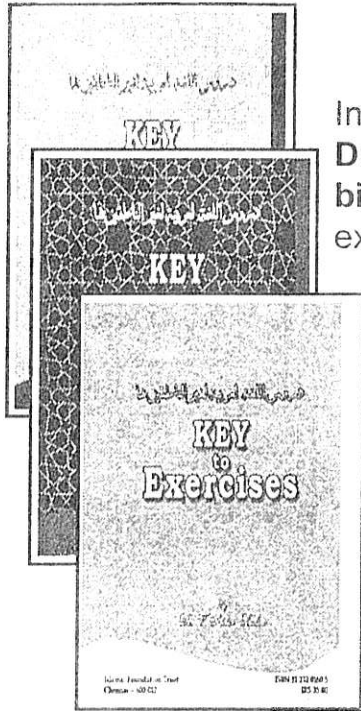
### Part 2

IRs 35.00 ISBN 81 232 0117 6

### Part 3

IRs 60.00 ISBN 81 232 0131 1





## Key To Exercises

In response to the growing demand by users of **Durus al-lughat al-'arabiyyah li-ghair al-natiqina biha** all over the world, this exclusive key to the exercises has been designed. It is hoped that this key will greatly help the users of **Durus al-lughah**, especially those who are learning the language without an instructor.

### Part 1

IRs 35.00

ISBN 81 232 0160 5

### Part 2

IRs 35.00

ISBN 81 232 0161 3

### Part 3

IRs 60.00

ISBN 81 232 0162 1

## OTHER BOOKS

- ★ **NUSUS MINAL HADITH** IRs 50.00  
**NABAWWIYYISH SHARIEFF**
- ★ **AL MUSIF FILUGHATI** IRs 45.00  
**WA-I'RABI SURATI YUSUF**
- ★ **AHADITH SAHLA** IRs 15.00
- ★ **NUSUS ISLAMIYA** IRs 65.00

